Analyzer 7.2 Administrator's Guide



Notes, Cautions, and Warnings



NOTE: A NOTE indicates important information that helps you make better use of your system.



CAUTION: A CAUTION indicates potential damage to hardware or loss of data if instructions are not followed.



WARNING: A WARNING indicates a potential for property damage, personal injury, or death.

© 2014 Dell Inc.

Trademarks: Dell[™], the DELL logo, SonicWALL[™], SonicWALL GMS[™], SonicWALL ViewPoint[™], SonicWALL Analyzer[™], and all other SonicWALL product and service names and slogans are trademarks of Dell Inc.

2014 - 10 P/N 232-002284-00 Rev. C

Table of Contents

Chapter 1. Introduction to Analyzer9
Overview
New Features in Analyzer 7.2
Deployment Requirements11
Operating System Requirements11
Hardware for Windows Server11
Virtual Appliance Requirements12
MySQL Requirements
Microsoft SQL Server Requirements13
Java Requirements
Browser Requirements13
Network Requirements14
Dell SonicWALL Appliance and Firmware Support
Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Installation15
License and Registration Requirements15
Accessing the Correct Management Interface16
Switching Between Management Interfaces16
Login to Analyzer
Navigating the Analyzer User Interface18
Firewall Panel
SRA Panel
CDP Panel
Console Panel
Analyzer Views and Status
Understanding Analyzer Icons23
Using the Analyzer TreeControl Menu24
Chapter 2. Provisioning and Adding Dell SonicWALL Appliances
Provisioning Dell SonicWALL Appliances
Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL Firewall Appliance
Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL SRA SMB Appliance
Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL E-Class SRA Series Appliance
Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL CDP Appliance
Adding Dell SonicWALL Appliances to Dell SonicWALL Analyzer
Adding Dell SonicWALL Appliances
Modifying Dell SonicWALL Appliance Settings
Deleting Dell SonicWALL Appliances from Analyzer

Chapter 3. Using the Dashboard Panel	33
Using the Universal Scheduled Reports Application	34
Using the Manage Templates Component	34
Adding a Scheduled Report Component	40
Managing the Scheduled Reports Component	53
Chapter 4. Overview of Reporting	59
Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting Overview	59
Viewing Reports	
Navigating Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting	
Global Views	
Unit View	
Layout of Reports Display	
The Date Selector	
Export Results	
The Filter Bar	
Adding Filters.	
Scheduling Reports	
Report Data Container	
Layout of the Data Container	
Custom Reports	
Troubleshooting Reports	
Managing Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reports on the Console Panel	
Chapter 5. Viewing Firewall Reports	
Firewall Reporting Overview	
Benefits of Firewall Reporting	
Firewall Reports Tab	
Viewing Available Firewall Report Types	
How to View Firewall Reports	
Viewing Global Summary Reports	
Viewing Data Usage Reports	
Using the Log Analyzer	. 100
Configuration Settings	.103
Setting Up Currency Cost for Summarizer	. 104
Adding Syslog Exclusion Filters	. 105
Custom Reports	. 106
Chapter 6. Viewing SRA Reports	.107
SRA Reporting Overview	. 107
SRA Reports Tab	. 107
What is SRA Reporting?	.108

Benefits of SRA Reporting108
How Does SRA Reporting Work? 108
Using and Configuring SRA Reporting109
Viewing Available SRA Report Types
Configuring SRA Scheduled Reports110
Navigating Through Detailed SRA Reports
Viewing SRA Summary Reports111
Viewing SRA Unit-Level Reports112
Viewing Unit-Level Data Usage Reports 112
Viewing SRA Top Users Reports113
Viewing Access Method Reports114
Viewing SRA Authentication User Login Report
Viewing SRA Authentication Failed Login Report
Viewing Web Application Firewall (WAF) Reports
Viewing Connection Reports127
Viewing SRA Analyzer Logs129
Syslog Exclusion Filter131
Custom Reports
Chapter 7. Viewing CDP Reports133
CDP Reporting Overview133
CDP Reports Tab133
What is CDP Reporting?
How to View CDP Reports134
Viewing the Capacity Summary Report135
Viewing Unit Backup Activity136
Chapter 8. Configuring User Settings141
Configuring User Settings141
Chapter 9. Configuring Log Settings143
Configuring Log Settings
Configuring Log View Search Criteria144
Chapter 10. Configuring Console Management Settings
Configuring Management Settings147
Configuring Email Settings148
Configuring System Debug Level148
Enforcing Password Security
Show Legacy (pre Analyzer 7.2) Reports
Synchronizing Model Codes149
Configuring Management Alert Settings150
Configuring Management Sessions151
Managing Sessions

Chapter 11. Managing Reports in the Console Panel	153
Summarizer	
About Summary Data in Reports	153
Summarizer Settings and Summarization Interval for CDP	
Configuring the Data Deletion Schedule Settings	156
Configuring Data Storage	
Configuring Hostname Resolution	
NMM Configuration	159
Syslog Exclusion Filter	159
Email/Archive	160
Configuring Email/Archive Settings	
Managing Legacy Reports	162
Chapter 12. Using Diagnostics	165
Configuring Debug Log Settings	166
Summarizer Status	167
Chapter 13. Granular Event Management	173
Granular Event Management Overview	173
What is Granular Event Management?	174
How Does Granular Event Management Work?	174
Using Granular Event Management	
About Alerts	175
Configuring Granular Event Management	176
Configuring Events on the Console Panel	176
Chapter 14. Using Analyzer Help	185
About Analyzer	185
Tips and Tutorials	186
Chapter 15. Using the UMH System Interface	187
Overview of the UMH System Interface	188
Switching to the Application Interface	188
Viewing Online Help and Tips	188
Logging Out of the UMH System Interface	
Configuring UMH System Settings	189
Viewing System Status	190
Managing System Licenses	190
Configuring System Time Settings (Virtual Appliance)	200
Configuring System Administration Settings	201
Managing System Settings	201
Using System Diagnostics	202
Using System File Manager (Virtual Appliance)	204
Using System Backup/Restore	205
Using System Shutdown (Virtual Appliance)	205

Configuring UMH Network Options (Virtual Appliance)	206
Configuring Network Settings (Virtual Appliance)	206
Configuring Network Routes (Virtual Appliance)	207
Configuring UMH Deployment Options	
Configuring the Deployment Role	
Configuring Deployment Settings	209
Configuring Web Server Settings	
Configuring SMTP Settings	
Configuring SSL Access	
Controlling Deployment Services	211
Appendix A. Upgrading	
Upgrading SonicWALL ViewPoint 6.0 to Analyzer 7.2	
Upgrading from Analyzer to GMS	
Enabling the GMS Free Trial from Analyzer	
Enabling the GMS Free Trial from the UMH Interface	
Completing the Free Trial Upgrade	
Configuring Appliances for GMS Management	
Purchasing a SonicWALL GMS Upgrade	
Miscellaneous Procedures and Tips	
Miscellaneous Procedures	
Appendix B. License Agreements	
End User Software License Agreement	
Apache Licensing Agreement	
How to apply the Apache License to your work	237

Chapter 1 Introduction to Analyzer

This chapter provides an overview of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer and information about the user interface. See the following sections:

- Overview on page 9
 - New Features in Analyzer 7.2 on page 10
- Deployment Requirements on page 11
- Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Installation on page 15
- Accessing the Correct Management Interface on page 16
- Login to Analyzer on page 17
- Navigating the Analyzer User Interface on page 18
- Analyzer Views and Status on page 22
- Understanding Analyzer Icons on page 23
- Using the Analyzer TreeControl Menu on page 24

Overview

Monitoring critical network events and activity, such as security threats, inappropriate Web use, and bandwidth levels, is an essential component of network security. Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting complements SonicWALL's network security offerings by providing detailed and comprehensive reports of network activity.

The Analyzer Reporting Module is a software application that creates dynamic, Web-based network reports. The Analyzer Reporting Module generates both real-time and historical reports to offer a complete view of all activity through SonicWALL network security appliances. With Analyzer Reporting, you can monitor network access, enhance security, and anticipate future bandwidth needs. The Analyzer Reporting Module:

- Displays bandwidth use by IP address and service
- Identifies inappropriate Web use
- Provides detailed reports of attacks
- Collects and aggregates system and network errors
- Shows VPN events and problems
- · Presents visitor traffic to your Web site
- Provides detailed daily logs to analyze specific events.

New Features in Analyzer 7.2

The following features were introduced in Analyzer 7.2:

- IPv6 Support IPv6 is supported in Analyzer 7.2, allowing the user to:
 - Install Analyzer in an IPv6 network environment. Analyzer can now access various Network Elements using IPv6 addresses, such as: Firewalls, SMTP servers, RADIUS/LDAP Authentication Servers, SNMP Managers, WebServices, and so on.
 - Access Analyzer web interfaces on an IPv6 network.
 - Generate IPv6 based reports.
- Scheduled Reports Permission Management In 7.1, scheduled reports created by an end user can only be viewed and configured by the creator and Administrator. 7.2 gives the scheduled report creator the ability to manage permissions of the scheduled reports so other users in the deployment can view and configure the report.
- Intrusion Reporting Enhancements Two new reports are added at root level to the Intrusion reports:
 - Reports > Intrusions > Details
 - Reports > Intrusions > Alerts
- Syslogs Sent by Appliances that are not under Reporting or Management— Some of the units that are no longer managed by Analyzer send syslogs that create NMM files that impact performance. In 7.2, the user is notified if this occurs and they can make the unit stop sending syslog messages.
- Application Level Data Archiving and Aging In 7.1 data was not deleted from the application table, such as logs and meta data tables, causing the number of rows to grow quickly in the tables, affecting overall performance of the application. In 7.2 the console logs and application meta data tables are aged and archived to fix this issue.
- Localization Support for the Korean language is included in 7.2.
- Disable Archiving of Syslogs to File System— Added the option to disable storing of archived syslogs.
- Reverse DNS Support This feature enhances the quality of data by performing a
 reverse lookup on the private IP addresses (LAN Side) with a missing hostname sent by
 the firewall. The reverse lookup is performed by logging into the DNS server on the LAN
 side of the firewall. This functionality requires the Analyzer to be installed on the LAN side
 of the firewall, to be able to access the DNS Server.
- Log Analyzer Enhancements The Log Analyzer interface is customizable to allow expansion and easy distribution of columns for ease of navigation.

Deployment Requirements

The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer comes with a base license to manage either 5, 10, or 25 nodes. You can purchase additional licenses on MySonicWALL. For more information on licensing additional nodes, visit:

http://www.sonicwall.com/us/Products_Solutions.html



Note Analyzer is not supported on laptops or tablets.

Before installing, review the requirements in the following sections:

Operating System Requirements

The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer supports the following operating systems:

- Windows Server 2012 Standard 64-bit
- Windows Server 2012 R2 Standard 64-bit (Japanese Language Version)
- Windows Server 2012 R2 Datacenter
- Windows Server 2008 R2 Datacenter
- Windows Server 2008 SBS R2 64-bit
- · Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard 64-bit
- Windows Server 2008 SP2 64-bit
- Windows Server 2003 32-bit and 64-bit (SP2)
- Windows 8 32-bit and 64-bit
- Windows 7 64-bit

These Windows systems can either run in physical standalone hardware platforms, or as a virtual machine under Hyper-V or ESXi.



For best performance and scalability, it is recommended to use a 64-bit Windows operating system. Bundled databases run in 64-bit mode on 64-bit Windows operating systems. All listed operating systems are supported in both virtualized and non-virtualized environments. In a Hyper-V virtualized environment, Windows Server is a guest operating system running on Hyper-V. Analyzer is then installed on the Windows Server virtual machine that is layered over Hyper-V.

Hardware for Windows Server

Use the Capacity Calculator 2 to determine the hardware requirements for your deployment.

Note A Windows 64-bit operating system with at least 8GB of RAM is highly recommended for better performance of reporting modules. Read the "Capacity Planning and Performance Tuning" appendix in the *GMS Administrator's Guide*.

Virtual Appliance Requirements

The elements of basic VMware structure must be implemented prior to deploying the Analyzer Virtual Appliance. The Virtual Appliance runs on the following VMware platforms:

- ESXi 4.0 Update 1 (Build 208167 and newer)
- ESXi 4.1
- ESXi 5.0
- ESXi 5.1
- ESXi 5.5
- ESX 4.1
- ESX 4.0 Update 1 (Build 208167 and newer)

Use the following client applications to import the image and configure the virtual settings:

- VMware vSphere Provides infrastructure and application services in a graphical user interface for ESX/ESXi, included with ESX/ESXi. Allows you to specify Thin or Thick (Flat) provisioning when deploying the Virtual Appliance.
- VMware vCenter Server Centrally manages multiple VMware ESX/ESXi environments. Provides Thick provisioning when deploying the Virtual Appliance.

Deployment Considerations:

- All modules are 64-bit.
- Analyzer management is not supported on Apple MacOS.
- Use the Capacity Calculator 2 to determine the hardware requirements for your deployment.
- In GMS 7.2 the Virtual Appliances are 64-bit, that take advantage of additional RAM available to it. A minimum of 4GB RAM is required. However, at least 8GB of RAM is highly recommended for better performance of reporting modules.
- The performance of Analyzer Virtual Appliance depends on the underlying hardware. It is highly recommended to dedicate all the resources that are allocated to the Virtual Appliance, especially the hard-disk (datastore). In environments with high volumes of syslogs or AppFlow (IPFIX), you must dedicate local datastores to the Virtual Appliance.
- When using Thick, or Flat, provisioning as the storage type option, the entire amount of disk space is allocated when you import and deploy the Virtual Appliance file. When using Thin provisioning, the initial size is very small and grows dynamically as more disk space is needed by the application, until the maximum size is reached. After allocated, the size does not shrink if the application space requirements are subsequently reduced.

Additional disk space provided to the Virtual Appliance in the virtual environment, beyond the respective limits of 250GB or 950GB is not utilized.

ESX/ESXi can be configured with datastores of varying block sizes. The 4 or 8MB requirement for the 950GB deployment is because the block size determines the largest virtual disk that can be deployed, as shown in the table:

Block Size of Datastore	Largest Virtual Disk
1MB	256GB
2MB	512GB
4MB	1TB
8MB	2TB

MySQL Requirements

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer automatically installs MySQL as part of the base installation package. Separately installed instances of MySQL are not supported with Analyzer 7.2 Software.

Microsoft SQL Server Requirements

For SQL Server deployments in countries in which English is not the default language, set the default language to English in the Login Properties of the Analyzer database user in the SQL Server configuration.

The following SQL Server versions are supported:

- SQL Server 2012
- SQL Server 2008
- SQL Server 2005

Java Requirements

Download and install the latest version of the Java 7 plug-in on any system that accesses the GMS management interface. This can be downloaded from:

www.java.com

or

http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html

Browser Requirements

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer uses advanced browser technologies such as HTML5 that are supported in most recent browsers. Dell SonicWALL recommends using the latest Chrome, Firefox, Internet Explorer, or Safari browsers for administration of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer.

This release supports the following Web browsers:

- Google Chrome 18.0 or higher (recommended browser for dashboard real-time graphics display)
- Mozilla Firefox 16.0 or higher
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0 or higher (Do not use Compatibility Mode)



Note Internet Explorer version 10.0 in Metro interfaces of Windows 8 is currently not supported.

Mobile device browsers are not recommended for Dell SonicWALL Analyzer system administration.

Network Requirements

To complete the Analyzer deployment process documented in this guide, the following network requirements must be met:

- The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer server must have access to the Internet
- The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer server must have a static IP address
- The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer server's network connection must be able to accommodate at least 1KB/s for each device under management. For example, if Global Management System is monitoring 100 SonicWALL appliances, the connection must support at least 100 KB/s.

Note Depending on the configuration of Dell SonicWALL log settings and the amount of traffic handled by each device, the network traffic can vary dramatically. The 1KB/s for each device is a general recommendation. Your installation requirements might vary.

Dell SonicWALL Appliance and Firmware Support

Dell SonicWALL Platforms	Dell SonicWALL Firmware Version
Firewall / VPN	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
SuperMassive 10000 Series	SonicOS 6.0 or newer: Note: Only partial reporting support is currently available. Contact your Dell SonicWALL Sales representative for more information.
SuperMassive 9000 Series	SonicOS 6.1 or newer
NSA Series	SonicOS Enhanced 5.0 or newer
TZ Series	SonicOS Enhanced 3.2 or newer SonicOS Standard 3.1 or newer
PRO Series	SonicOS Enhanced 3.2 or newer
CSM Series	SonicOS CF 2.0 or newer
Secure Remote Access	
SMB SRA Series	SonicOS SSL-VPN 2.0 or newer (management) SonicOS SSL-VPN 2.1 or newer (reporting)
E-Class SRA Series	SRA 9.0 or newer
Backup and Recovery	
CDP Series	CDP 2.3 or newer (management) CDP 5.1 or newer (reporting)

Note Dell SonicWALL Analyzer 7.2 supports firewall App Control reporting. Refer to the SonicOS documentation for information on the supported SonicOS firmware versions.

Appliances running firmware newer than this Analyzer release can still be managed and reports can still be generated. However, the new features in the firmware release will be supported in an upcoming release of Analyzer.

Legacy SonicWALL XPRS/XPRS2, SonicWALL SOHO2, SonicWALL Tele2, and

SonicWALL Pro/Pro-VX models are not supported for Dell SonicWALL Analyzer reporting. Appliances running SonicWALL legacy firmware including SonicOS Standard 1.x and SonicWALL legacy firmware 6.x.x.x are not supported for SonicWALL Analyzer reporting.

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer can be connected to SSL-VPN 2000 and 4000 appliances. Use the **Log > ViewPoint** page to set up the Analyzer connection (in addition to the configuration changes made on the Analyzer). In Dell SonicWALL SRA SSL-VPN 5.5 or later firmware versions, a **Log > Analyzer** page is provided for configuration of Analyzer settings.

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Installation

Analyzer can be installed as a fresh install or as an upgrade to Analyzer 7.2. Beginning in SonicWALL ViewPoint 5.1, all software components related to Dell SonicWALL Analyzer and SonicWALL Global Management System (GMS), including the MySQL database, executable binary files for all services, and other necessary files, are installed using the Universal Management Suite (UMS) single-binary installer. All SonicWALL Analyzer and SonicWALL GMS files are installed as part of the Universal Management Suite, but no distinction is made between SonicWALL Analyzer and SonicWALL GMS during the installation. The initial installation phase takes just a few minutes for any type of installation, such as a SonicWALL Analyzer server, a SonicWALL GMS server, a database server, or any other role.

To install the Universal Management Suite from the single binary installer, refer to the *Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Getting Started Guide*.

License and Registration Requirements

SonicWALL Analyzer is registered and licensed from the Windows server on which it is installed. Dell SonicWALL Analyzer registration is performed using the SonicWALL Universal Management Host system interface.

Refer to the *Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Getting Started Guide* for detailed instructions on registering and licensing Analyzer on your system.

On Dell SonicWALL appliances that send reporting data to the Analyzer, Analyzer is licensed and activated separately from the Dell SonicWALL appliances. MySonicWALL provides a way to associate Dell SonicWALL appliances with the Analyzer instance installed on the Windows system. Licensing your Analyzer application on a Dell SonicWALL appliance requires:

 A MySonicWALL account. A MySonicWALL account allows you to manage your SonicWALL products and purchase licenses for various services. Creating a MySonicWALL account is fast, simple, and free. Simply complete an online registration form directly from your SonicWALL security appliance management interface. Your MySonicWALL account is also accessible at

<https://www.mysonicwall.com> from any Internet connection with a Web browser. After you have an account, you can purchase SonicWALL Analyzer and other licenses for your registered SonicWALL security appliances.

 A registered SonicWALL security appliance with active Internet connection. You need to register your SonicWALL security appliance to activate SonicWALL Analyzer. Registering your SonicWALL security appliance is a simple procedure done directly from the management interface. After your SonicWALL security appliance is registered, you can activate SonicWALL Analyzer by using an activation key or by synchronizing with mysonicwall.com.

Accessing the Correct Management Interface

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer includes two separate management interfaces:

SonicWALL Universal Management Host (UMH) System Management Interface - Used • for system management of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer instance, including registration and licensing, setting the admin password, creating backups, restarting the system, configuring network settings, selecting the deployment role, and configuring other system settings.

Access the system management interface with the URL: http://<IP_address>:<port_number>/appliance/

If you are using the standard HTTP port, 80, it is not necessary to append the port number to the IP address. If you are accessing the interface from the same system on which it is installed, use the following URL: http://localhost/appliance/

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Management Interface – Used to access the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer application that runs on the system. This interface is used to configure and view Dell SonicWALL Analyzer reporting on SonicWALL appliances and for configuring Dell SonicWALL Analyzer administrative settings. Access the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer management interface with one of the following URLs: http://<IPaddress>:<port_number>/sgms/ http://localhost/sgms/

Switching Between Management Interfaces

You can easily switch between the SonicWALL UMH system management interface and the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer application management interface.

One method is to change the URL by adding **/sgms** for the Analyzer application interface or adding */appliance* for the UMH interface.



A second method involves clicking the **Switch** icon. While logged into either interface, you can switch to the login page of the other interface by clicking **Switch** in the top right switch corner of the page.

Login to Analyzer

After registering your SonicWALL Analyzer product, to log in to the SonicWALL Analyzer management interface, either double-click on the SonicWALL Analyzer icon on your desktop, or from a remote system, access the following URL from a web browser:

http://<IP_address>:<port_number>

The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer login page appears by default in English. To change the language setting, click your language of choice at the bottom of the login page. The available language choices for SonicWALL Analyzer include English, Japanese, Simplified Chinese, and Tradition Chinese.

SonicWA	れ Analyzer Login
	⚠ Please log in
User	
Password	
	Submit
English	旦本語 茵体中文 繁殖中文 한국의

- Step 1 Enter the SonicWALL user ID (default: admin) and password (default: password). Select 'Local Domain' as the domain (default).
- Step 2 Click Submit. The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer management interface displays.

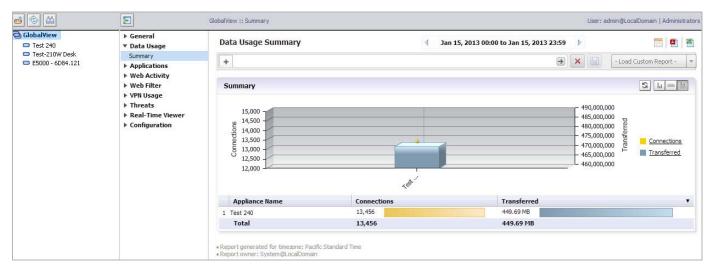
Note For more information on installation, login procedures, and registration of your SonicWALL Analyzer installation, refer to the appropriate *Getting Started Guide*, available at: http://www.sonicwall.com/us/support.html

Navigating the Analyzer User Interface

This section describes the Firewall, SRA, and Console panels in the SonicWALL Analyzer user interface. For information about the Dashboard panel, see the Using the Universal Scheduled Reports Application on page 34.

Firewall Panel

The Firewall Panel is an essential component of network security that is used to view and schedule reports about critical network events and activity, such as security threats, inappropriate Web use, and bandwidth levels. To open the Firewall Panel, click the **Firewall** tab at the top of the Analyzer user interface.



From the Firewall Panel, you can view the following for connected SonicWALL appliances:

- View general unit status, license status, and syslog settings.
- View the SonicWALL security dashboard. Dashboard reports display an overview of bandwidth, uptime, intrusions and attacks, and alerts for connected SonicWALL firewall appliances. The Security Dashboard report provides data about worldwide security threats that can affect your network. The Dashboard also displays data about threats blocked by the SonicWALL security appliance.
- View custom reports of Internet activity or Website filtering at the unit level. Custom reports filter raw syslog data and you can specify start and end dates or a date range such as "Week to date." You can filter by user, domain, protocol, traffic, and full URL categories, depending on the type of custom report. The search template can be saved for use again later with the same appliance.
- View general bandwidth usage. These reports include a daily bandwidth summary report, a top users of bandwidth report, and over-time summary and top users reports.
- View a services report. This report includes information about events and usage of protocols and megabytes.
- View Web bandwidth usage. These reports include a daily bandwidth summary report, a top visited sites report, a top users of Web bandwidth report, a report that contains the top sites of each user, and a weekly summary report.
- View the number of attempts that users made to access blocked websites. These reports include a daily summary report, a top blocked sites report, a top users report, a report that contains the top blocked sites of each user, and a weekly summary report.

- View file transfer protocol (FTP) bandwidth usage. These reports include a daily FTP bandwidth summary report, a top users of FTP bandwidth report, and a weekly summary report.
- View mail bandwidth usage. These reports include a daily mail summary report, a top users of mail report, and a weekly summary report.
- View VPN usage. These reports include a daily VPN summary report, a top users of VPN bandwidth report, and a weekly summary report.
- View reports on attempted attacks and errors. The attack reports include a daily attack summary report, an attack by category report, a top sources of attacks report, and a weekly attack summary report. The error reports include a daily error summary report and a weekly error summary report.
- View reports on attempted virus attacks. Virus attacks reports are available for appliances that are licensed for SonicWALL Gateway Anti-Virus. These reports include the most frequent virus attack attempts, virus attacks by top destinations, virus attacks over time, virus attacks over a period of time, and virus attacks by top destinations over time.
- View reports on attempted spyware attacks. Anti-spyware reports are available for appliances that are licensed for SonicWALL Anti-Spyware. These reports include spyware attacks by category, spyware attacks over time, and spyware attacks by category over time.
- View reports on attempted intrusion attacks. Intrusion prevention reports are available for appliances that are licensed for SonicWALL Intrusion Prevention Service. These reports include intrusion attacks by source IP address, intrusion attacks by category, intrusion attacks over time, and intrusion attacks by category over time.
- View reports on traffic triggering Application Firewall policies. Application Firewall reports are available for SonicWALL firewall appliances that are licensed for SonicWALL Application Firewall. These reports include summary, over time, top applications, top users, and top policies.
- View successful and unsuccessful user and administrator authentication attempts. These reports include a user authentication report, an administrator authentication report, and a failed authentication report.
- View detailed logging information. The detailed logging information contains each transaction that occurred on the SonicWALL appliance.
- View current alerts and access alert settings.

SRA Panel

The SRA panel provides access to SSL VPN appliances and is similar to the Firewall panel. It is used to view and schedule reports about critical network events and activity, such as security threats, inappropriate Web use, and bandwidth levels. To open the SRA Panel, click the **SRA** tab at the top of the Analyzer user interface.

6 6		SSL-VPN 2000 - 5408.81 :: Timeline	User: ac	dmin@LocalDomain Administrators
ClobalView CSL-VPN 2000 - 5408.81	General General Data Usage Timeline Users User Activity Access Method Authentication WAF Connections Custom Reports Analyzers Configuration	SSL-VPN 2000 - 5408.81 :: Timeline Timeline + Timeline Appliance not licensed for Analyzer.	User: ac	imin@LocaDomain Administrators
		• Report generated for timezone: Pacific Standard Time • Report owner: System@LocalDomain		

From the SRA Panel, you can view the following for connected SonicWALL SSL VPN appliances:

- View general unit status, license status, and syslog settings.
- View general bandwidth usage. These reports include a daily bandwidth summary report, a top users of bandwidth report, and over-time summary and top users reports.
- View custom reports of custom reports of resource activity at the unit level. Custom reports filter raw syslog data and you can specify start and end dates or a date range such as "Week to date." You can filter by user, protocol, destination IP, and source IP categories. The search template can be saved for use again later with the same appliance.
- View a resources report. This report includes information about connections and the resource used to connect, such as HTTPS or NetExtender.
- View successful and unsuccessful user authentication attempts. These reports include a user authentication report and a failed authentication report.
- View detailed logging information. The detailed logging information contains each transaction that occurred on the SonicWALL appliance.

CDP Panel

The CDP panel provides access to CDP appliances and is similar to the SRA panel. It is used to view and schedule reports about storage capacity, used quota, and free quota. To open the CDP Panel, click the **CDP** tab at the top of the Analyzer user interface.

e 🕲 🗳	E	GlobalView :: Summary					User: admir	n@LocalDomain Administrators
GlobalView ALEX CDP JPN IT Services - CDP	 ▶ General ▼ Capacity 	Summary	٩	Jan 17, 2012 00:00 to .	Jan 17, 2012 23:59	Þ		
	Summary Custom Reports	+)	× 📳 🤄	- Load Custom Report - 🛛 🔻
	P cuscom reports	Summary						
		140,000,000,000,000 120,000,000,000,000 80,000,000,000,000 60,000,000,000,000 40,000,000,000,000 20,000,000,000,000 0		Teer.				Used Quota
		Appliance Name	Used Quota	Total Quota	Free Quota		Free Percent	tane
		1 IT Services - CDP	1.32 TB	116.35 TB	115.02 TB		98.86%	luge.
		Total	1.32 TB	116.35 TB	115.02 TB			
							14	I of 1 pages ► ►
		Report generated for timezone: Pacific 5 Report owner: System@LocalDomain	Standard Time					

Console Panel

The Console Panel is used to configure Dell SonicWALL Analyzer settings, view pending tasks, view the log, manage licenses, and configure alerts. To open the Console Panel, click the **Console** tab at the top of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer user interface.

	General	User: admin@LocalDomain Administrators
 User Settings General 	Change Analyzer Password	
 Log Management Reports Diagnostics Events 	Current Analyzer Password: New Analyzer Password: Confirm New Password:	
▶ Help	Miscellaneous Settings	
	Analyzer Inactivity Timeout: 30 Minutes (-1 = never times out) Max Rows Per Screen: 10 Range: [10100] (Applicable to non-reporting related paginated screens only) Auto Save Dashboard Settings: 3 Minutes (-1:Auto Save not enabled or Range: [160])	
	Update Reset	

From the Console Panel, you can do the following:

- Change the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer password, adjust the amount of inactive time before the user is automatically logged out of Analyzer, and set the maximum number of rows displayed on paginated screens.
- Configure Web sites and Web users that are excluded from Web usage reports.
- View the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer log and delete old log messages. The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer log contains information on alert notifications, failed Dell SonicWALL Analyzer login attempts, and other events that apply to Dell SonicWALL Analyzer.

- Manage SMTP settings, system email addresses, archive report settings, debug level for logs, and password security settings. You can set the schedule and server settings, and the email alert recipient schedule and preferred format.
- Manage login sessions. You can view the status of user sessions and, if necessary, end them.
- Configure report settings for sort options and maximum units with Log Viewer enabled. Enabling Log Viewer allows custom reports for the system, but is resource intensive.
- Control summarizer settings, syslog and summarized data deletion schedules, and host name resolution settings.
- Configure email archive settings and search settings for scheduled reports, and manage data archiving.
- · View summarizer diagnostics, useful for capacity planning.
- Configure granular event management report settings, including threshold, schedule, and alert settings.
- Configure Web services deployment settings and view Web services status.
- View the version number, serial number, and database information for SonicWALL Analyzer, and access links to all available tips and video tutorials.

Analyzer Views and Status

SonicWALL Analyzer allows you to view status and reports for all appliances at once using **GlobalView**, or for a single unit at a time with the **Unit** view. Analyzer provides status information on the **General > Status** page of the Firewall, SRA, or CDP panel.

GlobalView is a grouping of all the appliances you are monitoring with Analyzer. From the GlobalView of the Firewall, SRA, or CDP panel, Summary and Over Time reports are available for all SonicWALL appliances monitored by SonicWALL Analyzer.

To open the My Reports view, click the **GlobalView** icon at the top of the left pane. To display the global status page, navigate to **General > Status**.

ei 🐵 🖴	8	GlobalView :: Status			User: admin@LocalDomain Administrators
GlobalView 3500 E5000 - 6D84,121 NSA 240 - 59F1.125 NSA2400 Test 240 Test 240 Test 2210W Desk T21/215	 ▼ General Status > Data Usage > Applications > Web Activity > Web Filter > VPN Usage 	Global Nod Firewalls in the System: 7 Analyzer License Status Firewall E5000 - 6D84.121 NSA 240 - 5971.125	e: Global¥iew Status Not Licensed Not Licensed	Info	
	 Threats Real-Time Viewer Configuration 	Test 240 Test-210W Desk 3500 TZ105 NSA2400	Licensed Licensed Licensed Not Licensed Licensed		

From the Unit view, reports contain detailed data for the selected SonicWALL appliance. To specify the unit view, click any unit in the left pane. To display the unit status page, navigate to **General > Status** on the **Firewall**, **SRA**, or **CDP** panel.

e 2 🕲 🕰		NSA2400 :: Status				User: admin@LocalDomain Administrators
 GlobalView 3500 E5000 - 6084.121 NSA 240 - 59F1.125 NSA2400 Test 240 Test 240 Test-210W Desk T2105 	General Status Data Usage Applications User Activity Web Activity Web Filter WPN Usage	Model: Serial Number: Firmware Version: SonicWALL IP: Time Zone: Analyzer: Access Mode:	Unit Node: NS SonicWALL NS/ 0017C59957EC SonicOS Enhan 10.103.36.240 Pacific Time (US Licensed HTTPS	2400 ced 5.8.1.4-41o	Info	
	 Intrusions Gateway Viruses Spyware Attacks Authentication Analyzers Configuration Custom Reports 	Syslog Servers IP Add 10.203.2 <u>Synchronize 5</u> <u>With MySonic</u> Note: Status informatic click on the link above. and update them manu	23.66 Settings With / WALL.com on is updated evo To change these	ery 24 hours. To ref		

Understanding Analyzer Icons

This section describes the meaning of icons that appear next to managed appliances listed in the left pane of the Analyzer management interface.

Appliance Status	Description
	One blue box indicates that the appliance is operating normally. The appliance is accessible from the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer, and no tasks are pending or scheduled.
0	Three blue boxes indicate that all appliances in the global group of this type (Firewall/SRA/CDP) are operat- ing normally.

Using the Analyzer TreeControl Menu

This section describes the content of the TreeControl menu within the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer user interface.

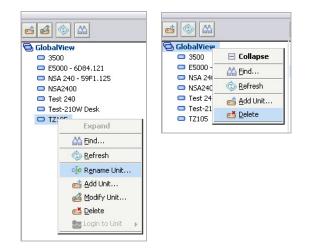
You can control the display of the TreeControl pane by selecting one of the appliance tabs at the top of the main window. For example, when you click the **Firewall** tab, the TreeControl pane displays all the connected SonicWALL firewall appliance units. The two appliance tabs can display the following appliance types when Analyzer is monitoring these device types:

- SonicWALL firewall appliances
- SRA and EX-Series SRA appliances

You can hide the entire TreeControl pane by clicking the sideways arrow icon, and redisplay the pane by clicking it again. This is helpful when viewing some reports or other extra-wide screens.

e 6 © #	
GlobalView GlobalView GlobalView	Hide TreeControl Panel Status
 E5000 - 6D84.121 NSA 240 - 59F1.125 	 Data Usage Applications
 NSA2400 Test 240 	User Activity

To open a TreeControl appliance menu, right-click GlobalView or a Unit icon.



The following options are available in the right-click menu:

- Find Opens a Find dialog box that allows you to search for units.
- Refresh Refreshes the Analyzer UI display.
- Rename Unit (unit view only) Renames the selected SonicWALL appliance.
- Add Unit Add a new unit to the Analyzer view. Requires unit IP and login information.
- Modify Unit (unit view only) Change basic settings for the selected unit, including unit name, IP and login information, and serial number.
- Delete Delete the selected unit
- Login to Unit (unit view only) Log in to the selected unit using HTTP or HTTPS protocols.

Chapter 2

Provisioning and Adding Dell SonicWALL Appliances

This chapter describes how to provision and add Dell SonicWALL appliances to the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer. All Dell SonicWALL appliances must be provisioned before adding them to the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL Firewall Appliance on page 26
- Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL SRA SMB Appliance on page 27
- Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL E-Class SRA Series Appliance on page 28
- Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL CDP Appliance on page 28
- Adding Dell SonicWALL Appliances to Dell SonicWALL Analyzer on page 29

Provisioning Dell SonicWALL Appliances

This section describes how to configure Dell SonicWALL appliances to support Dell SonicWALL Analyzer.

Note Prior to adding a unit to Analyzer, the provisioned Dell SonicWALL appliance needs to be registered with License Manager. And during registration, make sure the provisioned Dell SonicWALL appliance has a valid Analyzer license—one Analyzer license for each Dell SonicWALL appliance.

Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL Firewall Appliance

To provision a Dell SonicWALL firewall appliance for Dell SonicWALL Analyzer, complete the following:

- **Step 1** Log in to the firewall appliance. Navigate to the **Log > Syslog** page.
- Step 2 In Syslog Servers, click Add.
- **Step 3** Enter the Analyzer IP address to start sending syslogs. The Analyzer service should be activated. Set the log in UTC format and log category.

😟 Network	•,0009			
ڬ SonicPoint	Accept Cancel			
Firewall Settings	Syslog Settings			
DPI-SSL	Syslog Facility:	Local Use 0	~	
Anti-Spam	Override Syslog Settings with ViewPoint Setting	15		
VPN	Syslog Event Redundancy Filter (seconds):	60		
SSL VPN	Syslog Format:	Default 💌		
Users	Enable Event Rate Limiting			
High Availability	Maximum Events Per Second:	1000		
Security Services WAN Acceleration	Enable Data Rate Limiting	40000000		
Log	Maximum Bytes Per Second:	1000000		
View Categories	Syslog Servers			
Syslog	Server Name		Server Port	Configure
Automation	10.5.33.107 - [GM5]		514	
Flow Reporting	10.5.33.111		514	\otimes
Name Resolution Reports	10.5.33.4		514	\otimes
ViewPoint	Add			

Step 4 Navigate to the System > Time page, and enable Display UTC in logs (instead of local time).

Dashboard	System /	
Status	Time	
Licenses Support Services	Accept Ca	ncel
Administration	System Time	
SNMP Certificates	Time (hh:mm:ss):	15 • : 02 • : 03 •
Time	Date:	November 👻 20 🛩 2011 🛩
Schedules	Time Zone:	India (GMT+5:30)
Settings	Set time automatical	y using NTP
Packet Monitor	Automatically adjust	clock for daylight saving time
Diagnostics Restart	Display UTC in logs (i	instead of local time)
Network	Display date in Inter	national format
▶ 📥 SonicPoint	Only use custom NTF	^o servers
🕨 🏟 Firewall		
▶ 🐺 Firewall Settings	NTP Settings	

Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL SRA SMB Appliance

To provision a Dell SonicWALL SRA SMB appliance for Dell SonicWALL Analyzer, complete the following:

- **Step 1** Log in to the SRA SMB appliance. Navigate to the Log > Analyzer page.
- Step 2 In Analyzer Settings, click Enable Analyzer.
- Step 3 Click Add to add the Analyzer IP address, this starts sending syslogs.

System	1		
🕺 Network	Log > Analyzer		
Portals Services NetExtender Virtual Assist Web Application Firewall Users	Analyzer Licensed Analyzer is now licensed for this applance. In the section below you can add the IP address and port number of your Analyzer server(s) and verify that 'Ena Refer to your SonicWALL Analyzer User's Guide or go to SonicWALL, Inc. for more information about configuring a		
Log View Settings	Analyzer Settings		
Categories	Enable Analyzer		
ViewPoint	Analyzer Server Hostname/IP	Port	Configure
Analyzer	10.5.252.211	514	ØX
Virtual Office	Add		

Step 4 Navigate to the System > Time page, and enable Display UTC in logs (instead of local time).

🗢 🚍 System Status	System > Time		
Licenses	System Time		
Time Settings Administration Certificates Monitoring Diagnostics Restart V Network.	Display UTC in logs	15 : 08 : 54 11 20 2011 India (GMT+5:30)	V
Portals	NTP Settings		
Services MetExtender	Update Interval (second	ls): 3600	
🕨 🤍 Virtual Assist	NTP Server 1:	time.nist.gov	
Web Application Firewall	NTD C	time windown com	

Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL E-Class SRA Series Appliance

Currently there is no Analyzer settings implementation in SonicWALL E-Class SRA series appliances. To add Analyzer reporting support, use the **Additional ViewPoint** settings in the **General Settings > Configure Centralized Management** screen, and enter the Analyzer IP address and port number to start sending syslog.

Security Administration Access Control	Configure Centralized Management		General Settin	gs > Configure Centralized Managemen
Resources				
Users & Groups	Configure this appliance for use with ViewPoint reporting server.	a Global	Management Syster	m (GMS) server and/or a
User Access Realms Aventail WorkPlace Agent Configuration End Point Control System Configuration General Settings Network Settings SSL Settings	GMS/ViewPoint server settings → Enable GMS/ViewPoint GMS/ViewPoint server address:* GMS/ViewPoint server port:* Heartbeat interval:* Options:	10.195. 514 60	seconds	
Authentication Servers Services Virtual Assist Maintenance Monitoring User Sessions System Status Logging Troubleshooting	Additional ViewPoint server Carter C	Note requi	Id only heartbeat st : Choosing this option w red for reporting	
	Password:* Confirm password:* Options: Save Cancel	•••••• •••••• Enal	ble single sign-on fa	On the GMS/WewPoint Add Unit screen, add this appliance by entering "GM"'s sche login name and this value as the password. Ir AMC configuration

Provisioning a Dell SonicWALL CDP Appliance

Currently there is no Analyzer settings implementation in Dell SonicWALL CDP appliances. To add Analyzer reporting support, use the **Analyzer** settings in the **Settings > SMB** screen. In Active Report, select **Enable**, and enter the Analyzer IP address and port number to start sending CDP syslog.

Log out Your Device: CDP 2440i	System > Settin	gs		
Status: Registered	Password Time M	'P Mail Alert Email Rep	orts GMS Offsite	Import/Export
System	Heartbeat/Syslog		Activity Report	
Administration	Name/IP Address:	10.5.33.107	Name/IP Address:	10.5.33.4
Diagnostics Registration/Licenses Activity Progress	Port: Interval (Sec): Minimum Syslog Priority:	514 60 Informational V	Port:	443

Adding Dell SonicWALL Appliances to Dell SonicWALL Analyzer

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer checks with the Dell SonicWALL licensing server when you add an appliance, so it is important that Dell SonicWALL Analyzer has Internet access to the server.

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer can communicate with Dell SonicWALL appliances through HTTP or HTTPS.

Note A SonicWALL appliance might already be registered to a different MySonicWALL account, in this case the "Register to MySonicWALL.com" task cannot be executed, and remain in the scheduled tasks queue. To take full advantage of Analyzer managed appliances, it is important that either the managed appliance is not registered when it is added into Analyzer, or it is registered to the same MySonicWALL.com account as the Analyzer system that is managing the appliance.

For information on adding, modifying, and deleting units, refer the following sections:

- Adding Dell SonicWALL Appliances on page 29
- Modifying Dell SonicWALL Appliance Settings on page 30
- Deleting Dell SonicWALL Appliances from Analyzer on page 31

Adding Dell SonicWALL Appliances

To add a Dell SonicWALL appliance using the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer management interface, complete the following:

- **Step 1** Click the appliance tab that corresponds to the type of appliance that you want to add:
 - Firewall
 - SRA
 - CDP
- Step 2 Expand the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer tree and select the group to which you are adding the Dell SonicWALL appliance. Then, right-click the group and select Add Unit from the pop-up menu. To not specify a group, right-click an open area in the left pane (TreeControl pane) of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer management interface and select Add Unit or click the Add Unit icon in the tool bar.

a 💿 🖴	Ξ		GlobalView :: Summary	
GlobalView dummy dummy bits bits bits dummy1 bits bits bits bits bits bits bits bits	► Gen ▼ Data	eral a Usage	Data Usage Summary	
	E Collapse	y ations ctivity ilter	+ Summary	
	Add Unit	sage ts Unit Alt+A	13,000	
	► Cont	figuration	2 12,500 - .9 12,000 -	

The Add Unit dialog box appears:

🕌 Add Unit	×
Unit Name: Serial Number:	
IP Address: Login Name: Password:	admin
Access Mode:	Use Secure login (HTTPS)
Management Port:	443
	≪∕OK XCancel

- **Step 3** Enter a descriptive name for the Dell SonicWALL appliance in the **Unit Name** field. Do not enter the single quote character (') in the **Unit Name** field.
- Step 4 Enter the serial number of the Dell SonicWALL appliance in the Serial Number field.
- Step 5 Enter the IP address of the Dell SonicWALL appliance in the IP Address field.
- Step 6 Enter the administrator login name for the Dell SonicWALL appliance in the Login Name field.
- Step 7 Enter the password used to access the Dell SonicWALL appliance in the Password field.
- Step 8 For Access Mode, select from the following:
- Step 9 The Dell SonicWALL appliance is connected with HTTPS by default.
- Step 10 Enter the port used to connect to the Dell SonicWALL appliance in the Management Port field (default port for is HTTPS: 443).
- Step 11 Click OK. The new Dell SonicWALL appliance appears in the Analyzer management interface. It has a yellow icon that indicates it has not yet been successfully acquired.
- Step 12 Analyzer then attempts to set up an HTTPS connection to access the appliance. Analyzer then reads the appliance configuration and acquires the SonicWALL appliance for reporting. This might take a few minutes.

After the Dell SonicWALL appliance is successfully acquired, its icon turns blue, its configuration settings are displayed at the unit level, and its settings are saved to the database.

Modifying Dell SonicWALL Appliance Settings

If you make a mistake or need to change the settings of an added Dell SonicWALL appliance, you can manually modify its settings or how it is managed.

To modify a Dell SonicWALL appliance, complete the following steps:

- **Step 1** Right-click the appliance name in the left pane of the Analyzer UI and select **Modify Unit** from the pop-up menu. The Modify Unit dialog box appears.
- Step 2 The Modify Unit dialog box contains the same options as the Add Unit dialog box. For descriptions of the fields, see Adding Dell SonicWALL Appliances to Dell SonicWALL Analyzer on page 29.

When you have finished modifying options, click **OK**. The Dell SonicWALL appliance settings are modified.

Deleting Dell SonicWALL Appliances from Analyzer

To delete a Dell SonicWALL appliance from Dell SonicWALL Analyzer, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Right-click on a Dell SonicWALL appliance in the left pane and select **Delete** from the pop-up menu.
- Step 2 In the warning message that displays, click **Yes**. The SonicWALL appliance is deleted from SonicWALL Analyzer.

After the deleting the Dell SonicWALL appliance from Analyzer, unprovision the unit as a best practice. To unprovision the unit, log in to the Dell SonicWALL appliance and disable Analyzer management to avoid sending unnecessary syslogs to the Analyzer host.

Chapter 3 Using the Dashboard Panel

The Dashboard control bar provides top-of-the page menu items for customizing the settings of this page. When the Dashboard loads after SonicWALL Analyzer login, the control bar is displayed and then becomes hidden until you place your mouse cursor at the top of the page as shown in the following image. You can lock the control bar by clicking on the "pin the control bar" icon.

Dashboard	User: admin@LocalDom	ain Administrators
Universal Sche	duled Reports	ξä ‡
	Universal Scheduled Report	
	Use wizards based Universal Scheduled Report application to create, modify, delete report templates, report schedules and also be able to reschedule, monitor the existing schedule for all appliances under management and reporting with in the Analyzer deployment.	
	Universal Scheduled Reports	

The Dashboard control bar provides the following components:

- Universal Scheduled Reports—Includes Universal Scheduled Reports Wizard to create report templates.
- Switch to Full Screen—The four arrows in four corners icon enables the page into full-screen mode.
- Pin Control Bar—The pin icon allows you to keep the Dashboard control bar always on.

Using the Universal Scheduled Reports Application

Scheduled Reporting has been an essential reporting component since the initial release of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer product. It provides management interfaces to let the user setup schedules and configure reports to be exported in a periodic fashion and in various report formats. A typical scheduled report configuration is broken down by functionality and by nodes. Users need to navigate to separate tabs to configure scheduled reports for different nodes. The Universal Scheduled Reporting application streamlines the configuration processes to unify and enhance the existing functionality to the system-wide usage patterns. This allows the user to collect report data from multiple appliances and create a single global report.

Use wizards based u the existing schedule	Iniversal Scheduled Report app for all appliances under manageme	lication to create, modify, delete repo int and reporting with in the Analyzer	rt templates, report schedules and also be able to resche deployment.	dule, moni
		-+		
		y	*	
		Add a Scheduled Report	Manage Scheduled Reports	

To configure the Universal Scheduled Reports application, refer to the following sections:

- Using the Manage Templates Component on page 34
- Adding a Scheduled Report Component on page 40
- Managing the Scheduled Reports Component on page 53

Using the Manage Templates Component

Manage Templates are used to create a template that makes up the list of reports at group level or unit level. The list of available reports for each of the product types are abstract, so all the available reports in system are presented here. The report list contains the appliance firmware and shows all the available reports in Dell SonicWALL Analyzer for the appliance. This decision on which report is applicable to a particular firmware version (for example, Application Intelligence is for SonicOS 5.8 and above) is made at run time when the scheduled report engine is ready to create the report. The schedule report creation and the template usage is detailed in this section.

Adding a Template

To add a template using the Template Manager, complete the following steps:

Step 1 Navigate to the Universal Scheduled Report > Manage Templates page.

Firewall	SRA	CDP				
Add Template) () for u	nit 🔾 for group		٩ 🗌			Clear
Name		▲ Level	Owner	Last Update		
] PCI Reports Template (D	efault)	Unit a	dmin	2011-11-30 12:51:00	/	Ô

- **Step 2** Choose the tab for the appliance to which you wish to add a template.
- **Step 3** Select the option for either a **unit** or **group** template.
- Step 4 Click Add Template.

dd Template Name:		×
Reports		
Select All		
📃 Data Usage		
Timeline		
Initiators		
Responders		
Services		
Applications		
📃 Data Usage		
Detected		
	Add	Cancel

- **Step 5** Enter a name for your template.
- **Step 6 Visible To Non-Administrators** is disabled by default, select the check box to enable this option. This allows the end users to view list of all the report templates at a read-only level.
- Step 7 Select the check box next to the Reports you wish to use for this template.
- Step 8 Select the check box next to the **Policies** you wish to use for this template.
- Step 9 Click Add.

The configured template is now populated in the Template Manager list.

Firewall	SRA	CDI	>			
Add Template O for unit () for group				٩		
Name		▲ Level	Owner	Last Update		
PCI Reports Template (D	efault)	Unit	admin	2011-11-30 12:51:00	1	Ô
PCI Reports Template (D	efault)	Unit	admin gmsdoc	2011-11-30 12:51:00 2011-11-16 17:51:00	1	0 0

Editing an Existing Template

This section details the configuration procedures for editing an existing template. The **Universal Scheduled Report > Template Manager** allows you to filter the template list by Name, Level, Owner, and Last Update. To use the search option to find and edit an existing template, complete the following steps:

Searching for an Existing Template

- Step 1 Navigate to the Universal Scheduled Reports > Manage Template page.
- Step 2 Click the search text field, then enter your search criteria.

A pull-down appears under the search text field.

Step 3 Select a filter for your search criteria by clicking Name, Level, Owner, or Last Update from the search pull-down list. In this example, we are entering "unit" for the search criteria and filtering the search results by level.

Firewall	SRA	CDP				
Add Template O for unit O for group		9		unit		Clear
				Name: "unit"		
Name		Level	Owner	Level: "unit"		
PCI Reports Template (Default)		Unit	admin	Owner: "unit" Last Update: "unit"		Ô
] Test Template 1		Unit	gmsdoc	2011-11-10 17:51:00	/	Ô
] Test Template 2		Group	gmsdoc	2011-11-17 11:09:00	1	Ô
] Test Template 3		Group	gmsdoc	2011-11-18 10:22:00	1	Ô
Test Template 4		Unit	gmsdoc	2011-11-18 10:22:00	1	ô

The Template Manager window displays the latest search results. Notice the template list now only shows report templates for level: units.

Firewall	SRA	1 ·	CDP			
Add Template O for u	nit 💿 for group		🔍 uni	ł		Clear
Name		▲ Leve	Owner	Last Update		
PCI Reports Template (D	efault)	Unit	admin	2011-11-30 12:51:00	1	Ô
Test Template 1		Unit	gmsdoc	2011-11-16 17:51:00	/	Ô
Test Template 4		Unit	gmsdoc	2011-11-18 10:22:00	1	Ô

Editing an Existing Template

Now that you found an existing template using the search filter, it is time to use the edit option.

warning Editing an existing template also changes the associated scheduled reports (if applicable).

Step 1 Click the Edit icon for the report you wish to edit.

Firewall	SRA	C	P		
Add Template) of for u	unit 🔾 for group		٩		Clear
Name		▲ Level	Owner	Last Update	
	pefault)	Level	Owner	Last Update 2011-11-30 12:51:00	1 1
Name PCI Reports Template (D Test Template 1	Pefault)				 ✓ ✓

Note To clear your search results and return the reports template list back to default, click Clear.

The Edit Template window displays.

iew Ter	nplate (Read Only View)	×
Name:	PCI Reports Template (Default)	
R	eports	
	Select All	
	Data Usage	
	Timeline	
	Initiators	
	Responders	
	Services	
	Applications	
	Data Usage	
	Detected	
		Close

- Step 2 Edit the name for your template.
- **Step 3 Visible To Non-Administrators** is disabled by default, select the check box to enable this option. This allows the end users to view list of all the report templates at a read-only level.
- Step 4 Select the check box next to the Reports you wish to use for this template.
- Step 5 Select the check box next to the **Polices** you wish to use for this template.
- Step 6 Click Update.

The configured template is now populated in the Template Manager list.

Firewall	SRA	CDI	•			
Add Template O for u	nit 💿 for group		٩ 🗌			Clear
Name		▲ Level	Owner	Last Update		
PCI Reports Template (D	efault)	Unit	admin	2011-11-30 12:51:00	/	ô
	efault)	Unit	admin gmsdoc	2011-11-30 12:51:00 2011-11-16 17:51:00	1	۵

Deleting a Template

The Template Manager offers three different ways to delete a template: deleting a single template, deleting multiple templates, or deleting all templates. Use the section Searching for an Existing Template on page 36 to search for templates to delete. complete the following steps to delete a Universal Scheduled Report Template(s):

warning Deleting a template(s) creates a cascading task to remove it from the Scheduled Reports used in this template.

Deleting a Single Template

Step 1 Navigate to the Universal Scheduled Reports > Manage Template page.

Step 2 Click the Trash icon for the template you wish to delete from the Template Manager list.

Firewall	SRA	CDI	P		
Add Template 💿 for u	nit 🔘 for group		٩ 🗆		Clear
Name		Level	Owner	Last Update	
PCI Reports Template (D	efault)	Unit	admin	2011-11-30 12:51:00	/ 0
Test Template 1		Unit	gmsdoc	2011-11-16 17:51:00	1
Test Template 2		Group	gmsdoc	2011-11-17 11:09:00	1 0

Deleting Multiple Templates

- Step 1 Navigate to the Universal Scheduled Reports > Manage Template page.
- Step 2 Click the check boxes for the templates you wish to delete.
- Step 3 Click Delete Selected. This button is grayed out by default until a check box is selected.

Firewall	SRA	CDF	•			
Add Template for unit	O for group		٩ 🗆			Clear
Name		Level	Owner	Last Update		
PCI Reports Template (Defa	ault)	Unit	admin	2011-11-30 12:51:00	1	Ô
Test Template 1		Unit	gmsdoc	2011-11-16 17:51:00	1	Ô
Test Template 2		Group	gmsdoc	2011-11-17 11:09:00	1	Ô
Test Template 3		Group	gmsdoc	2011-11-18 10:22:00	1	Ô
Test Template 4		Unit	gmsdoc	2011-11-18 10:22:00	/	Ô

Deleting all Templates

- Step 1 Navigate to the Universal Scheduled Reports > Manage Template page.
- Step 2 Select Name, this selects all templates in the list.
- Step 3 Click Delete Selected. This button is grayed out by default until a check box is selected.

Firewall	SRA	CDF					
Add Template for unit) for group		٩ 🗌				Clear
✓ Name		▲ Level	Owner	Last Update			
PCI Reports Template (Defau	lt)	Unit	admin	2011-11-30 12:51:00	1	Ô	
Test Template 1		Unit	gmsdoc	2011-11-16 17:51:00	1	Ô	
Test Template 2		Group	gmsdoc	2011-11-17 11:09:00	1	Ô	
Test Template 3		Group	gmsdoc	2011-11-18 10:22:00	1	Ô	
Test Template 4		Unit	gmsdoc	2011-11-18 10:22:00	1	Ô	

Adding a Scheduled Report Component

Using Universal Scheduled Reports gives you the ability to schedule reporting for multiple appliances at once, combined into a single report. The Scheduled Reporting is a wizard based tool that guides you through the steps for creating a scheduled report by manually selecting reports from the report listing or picking a template created in the section Using the Manage Templates Component on page 34, selecting a theme (cover logos, font colors, title, sub title), reporting properties (out put format, language), scheduling a type (weekly, monthly), and choosing a destination (up to five email addresses can be added for a single report). This section contains the following subsections:

- Searching for a Group or Device on page 40
- Creating a Universal Scheduled Report on page 43

Searching for a Group or Device

The Search option allows you to filter the Group/Device list by manually entering a device in the search text field and selecting it from the search pull-down list. You can further filter the Group/Device list by clicking the View pull-down and selecting a view type. The following example guides you through the Device List search process, detailing the versatility of the **Universal Scheduled Reports > Configuration Manager** search options.

Example

In this example we are using the Configuration Manager search options to find a SonicWALL TZ 210 wireless-N device in the Device List.

Step 1 Navigate to Universal Scheduled Reports > Add A Scheduled Report. Note: The Monitor tab is only available for SonicWALL GMS.

elect Reports				
Firewall	SRA	CDP	Monito	r
-				
C Firewall			GlobalView GlobalView ModelView	
Group/Device		Serial No	GlobalView ModelView Instance View	
		Serial No 00068118433	GlobalView ModelView Instance View StatusView	

- Step 2 Select the Firewall tab, located at the top of the Configuration Manager window.
- Step 3 Click the View pull-down, then select a view type from the list. In this example we are selecting Model View (Global View is selected by default), because we are searching for an exact appliance model. You can also filter the Device List by Firmware View, Global View, Instance View, Status View, or Gateway.

The Device List now displays all the appliance models.

Firewall	SRA	CDP	Monitor	
Device List - Firewall				
۹ 🗌			ModelView	
4 Firewall				
Group/Device		Serial No	Model	
Model: TZ 190 Enha	anced			
Model: TZ 190 Wire	less Enhanced			
C Model: TZ 200 wirel	ess-N			
Model: TZ 210				
C Model: TZ 210 wire	ess-N	4		
C Model: Unknown				_

Step 4 Select the Model: TZ 210 wireless-N.

A list of devices for that appliance model displays.

×
-

Note Notice that the search history bar populates each time you filter the list. You can use this to navigate back to previous search results.

Firewall	SRA	CDP	Monitor
evice List - Firewall			
.		II M	odelView
Firewall Model:	TZ 210 wire 🔻		
Group/Device		Serial No	Model

You can also click the **Search** text-box (if you know the exact name of the device), then manually enter the device name or select the device from the pull-down list.

Select Reports			
Firewall	SRA	CDP	Monitor
Device List - Firewall			
🔍 tz 2			ModelView 👻
TZ 200 W FDC0.29	É.		
TZ 210 1C0D.27	wire 💌		b
TZ 210W 81B1.28			
Gr TZ 220 - 4370		Serial No	Model
Test-210W Desk		0017C52DFBF	1 TZ 210 wireless-N

Step 5 Click the **Arrow** icon to schedule a report for that appliance. Refer to Creating a Universal Scheduled Report on page 43 for configuration procedures.

Firewall	SRA		CDP	Monitor
rice List - Fi	rewall			
				ModelView
•			3.8	
Firewall	Model: TZ 210 wire	-		
		•	Serial No	Model
Firewall Group/Devic	2	•		Model 1 TZ 210 wireless-N

Creating a Universal Scheduled Report

The Universal Scheduled Reports > Configuration Manager allows you to create a single report for multiple appliance models/devices at a group and unit level. The following example guides you through the report configuration process, including: Selecting Reports, General Information, and Theme Information, detailing the versatility of Universal Scheduled Reporting.

In this example we are using the Configuration Manager to schedule a single report for a Firewall appliance model (group level) and SRA devices (unit level).

Selecting Reports

Step 1 Navigate to Universal Scheduled Reports > Add a Scheduled Report. Note: The Monitor tab is only available for SonicWALL GMS.

Firewall	SRA	CDP	Monitor
ice List - Firewall			
		II M	odelView
Firewall		Serial No	Model
roup/Device		Serial No	Model
Model: TZ 190 Enh	anced		
Dividel: TZ 190 Wire	less Enhanced		
📄 Model: TZ 200 wire	less-N		
Model: TZ 210			
1970			

- Step 2 Select the Firewall tab, located at the top of the Configuration Manager window.
- Step 3 Search for the TZ 210 wireless-N model group. Refer to steps 1-3 in the section Searching for a Group or Device on page 40.
- Step 4 Click the Arrow icon for the Model: TZ 210 wireless-N.

The Reports tab displays in the Reports List.

elect Reports				
Firewall	SRA	CDP	Monitor	Selected Reports
eport List - Model: T2	Z 210 wireless-N			▼ Firewall
			Use Templates	▼ [Group] Model: TZ 210 wireless-N
Reports Pol	licies			Data Usage - Summary
Select All				Applications - Summary
Data Usage				
Summary				
Summary				

Step 5 Click the **Reports** tab, then select the check boxes for reports you wish to include or click **Use Templates** to choose a template you created.

st of
Selected
evices,
ame), and
ev

Step 6 Click the **Policies** tab, then select the check boxes for the policies you wish to include or click Use Templates to choose a template you created.

Firewall	SRA	CDP	Monitor	Selected Reports	
leport List - Model: T	Z 210 wireless-N			V Firewall	
			Use Templates	▼ [Group] Model: TZ 210 wireless-N	
Reports Po	plicies			Data Usage - Summary	
Select All				Applications - Summary	

The reports for the Firewall model group are now selected, next is choosing reports for the SRA device.

Step 7 Select the SRA tab.

The SRA models display in the Device List.

Firewall	SRA	CDP	Monitor
evice List - SRA			
		Ma	delView
SRA			

Step 8 Click the Model: SRA 2000.

The Device List displays all the SRA 2000 devices.

Select Reports				
Firewall	SRA		CDP	Monitor
Device List - S	RA			
۹ 🗌				odelView 👻
I SRA	Model: SSL-VPN 2000	-		Þ
Group/Devic	e		Serial No	Model
SSLVPN 20	000 5408		0006B1125408	SSL-VPN 2000

Step 9Click the Arrow icon for the SRA 2000 5408.The Reports window displays in the Reports List.

Step 10 Select the check boxes for the reports you wish to include or click **Use Templates** to choose a created template.

Note The SRA only offers a Reports tab (no Policies tab).

Firewall SRA CDP Monitor			Selected Reports	
ort List - SSLVPN 2	2000 5408 (0006B112540	8)		▼ Firewall
			Use Templates	▼ [Group] Model: TZ 210 wireless-N
Reports				Data Usage - Summary
Select All				Applications - Summary
Data Usage				▼ SRA
Users				▼ [Unit] SSLVPN 2000 5408 (0006B1125408)
Access Metho	bd			Data Usage - Timeline
Users				Data Usage - Users
Authenticatio	n			
	Clo	se		

Step 11 Click Next.

General Information

The General Information page displays.

Note The settings entered in the Task Info, Format/Settings, and Email/Archive Info sections, populate in the Configurations panel located on the right side of the General Information page.

Fask Info Image: Task Name * Example Report 1 Task Description This is an example for configuring a Universal Scheduled Report Task Description This is an example for configuring a Universal Scheduled Report Format/Settings Report Type * • Daily • Weekly • Monthly Report Type * • Daily • Weekly • Monthly Report Format * • PDF • XML Report Language * English • • Report Rows Display Disable the Report Yes • No Zip the Report Yes • No PDF Password Protect Yes • No	
Report Type * Daily Weekly Monthly Report Format * PDF XML Report Language * English Total and the second secon	Configurations Task Name: Example Report 1 Report Type: Daily Report Format: PDF Report Language: English
Report Format * • PDF XML Report Language * English Report Rows Display 20 Disable the Report Yes No Zip the Report Yes No	Report Rows Display: 20 Disable the Report: No Zip the Report: No PDF Password Protect No Delivery Type:Email Archive
PDF Password Protect O Yes O No	
mail/Archive Info	
Email	T

Step 12 Enter the following in the Task Info panel:

- Task Name: Example Report 1
- Task Description: This is an example for configuring a Universal Scheduled Report
- Step 13 Select the following in the Format/Settings panel:
 - Report Type: Daily, Weekly, or Monthly
 - Report Format: PDF or XML
 - If XML is selected, the following changes to the management interface occur:

• The **Single XML per Report** radio buttons display. If you select **Yes**, one XML file per report is generated. In this scenario, the number of XML files created is equal to the number of reports chosen.

Format/Settings		
Report Type *	 Daily 	O Weekly O Monthly
Report Format 🐐		⊙ XML
Single XML per Report	• Yes	◯ No

- The ZIP Password Protection option is grayed out.
- Report Language: English, Japanese, Chinese (Simplified), Chinese (Traditional), or Spanish
- Report Rows Display: 20, 50, 100
- Disable the Report: Yes or No
- Zip the Report: Yes or No
- PDF Password Protect: Yes or No (If Yes is selected, a pop-up window appears and prompts you to enter the Password)

PDF Password Protect	• Yes 🛛 No	
	Password	
	Retype Password	

- Step 14 Click the archive check box to save a PDF report to a new folder.
- Step 15 Complete the following in the Email / Archive Info panel:

Email/Archive Info	
Email	
Archive	

- Click **E-mail** to send a PDF report to an email account or alias.

The Email configuration options display.

mail/Archive Info			
🗹 Email			
E-Mail Destination 🜸	Select Destination Type	•	Add
E-Mail Subject 🜸	Administrator Appliance User		
E-Mail Body	Adhoc User		

- Click the E-Mail Destination pull-down, then select an Administrator, Appliance User, or Enter multiple Adhoc Users.
- Click Add after each selected destination.

The E-Mail Destination populates in the list.

E-Mail Destination	* Adhoc User	Add	
	Destination	Details	
	Admin	Administrator	Ô
	Appliance User	Appliance User	Ô
	Adhoc	Email Addresses (semicolon separated)	Ô

- Enter the E-mail Subject: Weekly Firewall and SRA Report
- Enter the E-Mail Body: This Universal Scheduled Report contains the SonicWALL TZ 210 wireless-N group and SRA 2000 unit

Mail Destination 🐐	Adhoc User	- Add	
	Destination	Details	
	Admin	Administrator	Ô
	Appliance User	Appliance User	Ô
	Adhoc	Email Addresses (semicolon separated)	Ô

- Click Archive to save a PDF report to a new folder.
 - Archive Folder: Test Archive Folder 1

Email/Archive Info			
Email			
E-Mail Destination 🐐	Administrator	•	Add
E-Mail Subject 🜸	Weekly UTM and SRA Rep	oort	
E-Mail Body	This Universal Scheduled wireless -N group and SSL		
Archive			
Archive Folder Te	st Archive Folder 1		

Step 16 Click Next.

Theme Information

The Theme Information page displays. If **XML** is selected from the General Information page, the Theme Information page is not displayed.

V
1-4-

Note The settings entered in the Cover Page and Report Page panels automatically update in the image located on the right side of the Theme Information page. To preview the cover / report pages, select the **Cover Page** or **Report Page** tab.

	eduled Report - Configuration Manager		
Theme Info	rmation		
Cover Page		Cover Page Report Page	
Cover Logo	Select a logo cover_logo.gif Vpload a logo Browse and Preview		
Cover Title	Foreground: 📃 Background: 📃	SOMICWALL	
Cover Subtitle	Foreground:		
Report Page			
	Title Foreground: R Background: R Background:	Naport Daha far Odabler 31, 2011	
		Centrel in-October 24, 2011 in 35.844	Powerd & SMATTALLY

Step 17 Select / Enter the following in the Cover Page panel:

- Cover Logo: Select a logo (click the pull-down and select a cover logo image) or Upload a logo (click **Browse** and **Preview** to upload a logo)
- Cover Title: Enter a name (Weekly Data Usage Report) for your Universal Scheduled Report, then select or enter the foreground and background colors
- Cover Subtitle: Enter a subtitle (U.S Engineering Department) for your Universal Scheduled Report, then select or enter the foreground and background colors

over Page	
Cover Logo	Select a logo cover_logo.gif
	O Upload a logo Browse and Preview
Cover Title	Weekly Data Usage Report
	Foreground: 📑 Background: 📑
Cover Subtitle	U.S Engineering Department
	Foreground: 💽 Background: 💽

Step 18 Select or enter the following in the **Report Page** panel:

- Report Title: Foreground and Background colors
- Report Description: Foreground and Background colors

Report Page	
Report Title	Foreground: 📑 Background: 📑
Report Description	Foreground: 💽 Background: 🖵

Step 19 Click the Cover Page and Report Page tabs to preview your Universal Scheduled Report.

Cover Page Report Page	Cover Page	Report Pa	ge	
SONICWALL	Bandwidt	h - Summary for 1	2011-06-29 Summary	
			Corrections 🗢 Transferred	
Weekly Data Usage Report	Time 1 Juli 1 2011	Connections	Transferred 68297 KB	Cost
	00:00		68.302 KB	USD 0 C01
U.S Engineering Department	01.00	71		
Report Date for December 01, 2011	3 Jul 11, 2011 02:00	90	68.291 KB	USD 0.001
	4 Jul 11 2011 03.00	74	68:50) KB	USOROB
	5 Jul 11 2011 04 00	71	6130 4 K 6	LISD (CEM
	6 Jul 11 2011 05:00	66	67 058 KB	U8D 0 001
	/ Jul 11, 2011 06.00	/2	68.43 NS	USD 0.001
	8 Jul 11 2011 07:00	185	1.000 MB	US00011
	9 Jul 11, 2011 (8 00	100	352.162 KB	USD 0.004
	10 Jul 11, 2011 03:00	02	70.379 KB	USD 0.001
	11 Jul 11 2011	88	305 587 KB	USD 6 005
	12 Jul 11, 2011	00	67.0 KB	USD 0.001
	11:00 13 Jul 11, 2011 12:00	73	68.702 KB	USD 0.001
Creates on December 01, 2011 03:49 PM Powered By SONTONIC	1			Powered By SONCTALL

Step 20 Click Next to manage permissions. Continue to the next step.

OR

Click **Finish** to complete the report. The report is now scheduled and can be found in the **Universal Scheduled Report > Manage Scheduled Reports** page.

Note When the Universal Scheduled Report PDF is exported, a table of contents is created. This allows you to quickly browse through your scheduled reports.

Step 21 In the Users panel, select users that you want to give permission to resend or manage this scheduled report. The selected users populate in the Selected Users panel.

Note —Only the Schedule Report Creator can assign permission resend and manage privileges to other users.

—If the Scheduled Report contains reports for multiple units and multiple reports, then the grantee should have permissions to the units and reports that are included for the scheduled report.

-Users under the Administrators group have access to all the schedule reports.

- Step 22 In the Action Permissions panel, click the check box for the type of permissions to give the selected user:
 - Resend—users with permissions to resend can only run the report.
 - Manage Scheduled Report—users with manage permissions can run and edit (manage) the report.

Universal Scheduled Report - Configu	iration Manager	D
Permission Management		
Users	Action Permissions	Selected Users
 CocalDomain Administrators Administrators	 	▶ LocalDomain
		Back Next Finish Cancel

Step 23 Click Finish to complete the report. The report is now scheduled and can be found in the Universal Scheduled Report > Manage Scheduled Reports page.

Managing the Scheduled Reports Component

Managing Scheduled Reports is used to manage the scheduled report task inventory by resending, Emailing / archiving now, editing, and deleting scheduled reports.

Resending a Scheduled Report

To resend a scheduled report, complete the following steps:

Step 1 Navigate to the Universal Scheduled Reports > Manage Scheduled Reports page.

Universal Scheduled Report - Report	Manager							
iewpoint Scheduler Summary								
Schedules in the system: Weekly Schedules Last Attempted: Monthly Schedules Last Attempted:	Nov 21, 20 Nov 6, 20	-	1 02:55 AM] 06:55 PM]	Next Wee	duled Email/ dy Reports hly Reports		Nov 22, 2011 Tue [02:55 AM] Nov 28, 2011 Mon [02:55 AM] Dec 6, 2011 Tue [06:55 PM]	
heduled Report Management								
lame contains En	or contains		Sche	edule Type Al	0		v Owner	
D 🗹 Name		Туре	Format	Owner	Status	Last Run Time	Last Run Error	
5 Sexample Report 1		Daily	PDF	gmsdoc		Nov 21, 2011 Mo		10
elete Selected Resend for Date Range	Email/Archive	Now						Close

Step 2 Use the filter options to search for a report in the Scheduled Report Management list, select the check box of the report you wish to resend.

Step 3 Click Resend for Data Range.

The Select Data Range pop-up window displays.

Start Dat	te: 1	0/31/20	011	
End Date	• F			

Step 4 Enter the Start / End dates by clicking the Calender icon and selecting the dates.

Step 5 Click Re-send.

The Info pop-up window displays, confirming the schedule resend is complete.

Info	
Selected Sche processing	dules set successfully for immediate
	ОК

Step 6 Click OK.

Emailing / Archiving Now

To Email / Archive a Universal Scheduled Report before its scheduled sending date, complete the following steps:

Step 1 Navigate to the Universal Scheduled Reports > Manage Scheduled Reports page.

ew	point Scheduler Summary									
W	chedules in the system: /eekly Schedules Last Attempted: If onthly Schedules Last Attempted:			1 02:55 AM] [06:55 PM]	Next Wee	eduled Email/ kly Reports 1 thly Reports		Nov 22, 2011 Tue [Nov 28, 2011 Mon [Dec 6, 2011 Tue [02:55 AM]	
he	duled Report Management									
lam	ne contains Error conta	ains		Sche	edule Type A		▼ Status	All 👻 Ow	ner All	
D	✓ Name		Туре	Format	Owner	Status	Last Run Tim	Last Run Error		
5	Z Example Report 1	Ø	Daily	PDF	gmsdoc		Nov 21, 2011 M	0		10

- **Step 2** Use the filter options to search for a report to Email /Archive in the Scheduled Report Management list.
- Step 3 Select the check box next to the report name.

Step 4 Click Email/Archive Now.

The Info pop-up window displays, confirming the immediate processing of Email / Archive.

Info	
	lules set successfully for immediate
processing	

Step 5 Click OK.

Your Scheduled report is now Emailed and Archived.

Editing a Scheduled Report

Complete the following steps to edit an existing scheduled report.

Step 1 Navigate to the Universal Scheduled Reports > Manage Scheduled Reports page.

UII	iversal Scheduled Report - Re	cport manager											
ew	point Scheduler Summary												
W	chedules in the system: eekly Schedules Last Attempted: onthly Schedules Last Attempted:			Next V	cheduled Email Veekly Reports Ionthly Reports	Time:	N	ov 6, 20	11 Sun [03:55 AM] 08:55 PM] [03:55 AM]			
he	duled Report Management								12				
lam	ne contains	Error contains			Schedule Type	All		•	Status (All	- Own	er All	
D	Name		Туре	Forma	at Owner	s	tatus	Last	Run Tim	e Last Ru	n Error		
2	TechPubs Test Report	(Daily	PDF	gmsdoc			Oct 31,	2011 Ma)			1 0
-													
iele	te Selected Resend for Date	Range Email/Ar	thive Now										Close

- Step 2 Use the filter options to search for a report in the Scheduled Report Management list, click the **Edit** icon for that Report.
- **Step 3** To edit the Scheduled Report, use the same configuration procedure shown in Creating a Universal Scheduled Report on page 43.

Disabling a Scheduled Report

To disable a scheduled report, complete the following steps:

- **Step 1** Navigate to the **Universal Scheduled Report > Manage Scheduled Reports** page.
- Step 2 Click on the Edit icon for the report you wish to disable.

The Universal Scheduled Reports - Configuration Manager window displays.

lect Reports					
UTM	SRA	CDP	Monitor	Selected Reports	Expand All Add Not
oort List - TZ 210	W 81B1.28 (0017C52D81B	1)		▼ UTM	
			Use Templates	▼ [Unit] TZ 210W 81B1.	28 (0017C52D81B1)
Reports	Policies			Data Usage - Timeli	ine
Select All	98. 		1	Data Usage - Top I	nitiators
Data Usage				Data Usage - Top R	Responders
Timeline				Data Usage - Top S	Services
Top Res				App Control - App (Control Usage
Top Ser				App Control - Top /	Applications Detected
App Control			App Control - Top Applications Blocked		
1		ose		App Control - Top C	Categories

Step 3 Click Next.

The General Information Page displays.

Universal Scheduled Report - Configuration Manager	
General Information	
Format/Settings	Configurations
Report Type * 💿 Daily 🔷 Weekly 🔿 Monthly	Task Name: Example Report 1
THE MERCE STREET LINES AND TRANSPORT	Report Type: Daily
Report Format * PDF XML Report Language * English	Report Format: PDF
Report Rows Display 20	Report Language: English
Disable the Report Yes No	Report Rows Display: 20
Zip the Report 🕖 Yes 💿 No	Disable the Report: Yes
PDF Password Protect Ores ONo	Zip the Report: No
	PDF Password Protect No

Step 4 In the Format / Settings panel, navigate to the Disable the Report option and click Yes.

Note To enable the scheduled report, repeat steps 1-3, then click No.

Deleting a Scheduled Report

To delete an existing Universal Scheduled Report, complete the following steps:

Step 1 Navigate to the Universal Scheduled Report > Manage Scheduled Reports page.

Un	iversal Scheduled Report - Re	eport Manager									•
iew	point Scheduler Summary										¢
W	chedules in the system: 'eekly Schedules Last Attempted: onthly Schedules Last Attempted:			Next Wee	eduled Email/A ekly Reports Tir thly Reports T	me: N	lov 1, 2011 Tue [03 lov 6, 2011 Sun [08 lov 7, 2011 Mon [03	8:55 PM]			
	duled Report Management	Error contains		c.t	nedule Type	All	👻 Status 🛛	1	Vwner	A.11	•
D			Туре	Format	1		Last Run Time	1		All	
12	TechPubs Test Report	6	Daily	PDF	gmsdoc		Oct 31, 2011 Mo			1	1
20					2 20025-3						
Dele	ete Selected Resend for Date	Range Email/Arc	hive Now							[Close

- **Step 2** Use the filter options to search for a report in the Scheduled Report Management list, select the check boxes for the reports you want to delete.
- Step 3 Click Delete Selected.

The selected reports are now deleted.

Note You can also use the **Trash** icon to delete a specific Scheduled Report.

Chapter 4 Overview of Reporting

This chapter describes how to use Dell SonicWALL Analyzer reporting, including the type of information that can appear in reports. A description of the available features in the user interface is provided.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting Overview on page 59
- Navigating Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting on page 63
- Report Data Container on page 76
- Custom Reports on page 83
- Managing Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reports on the Console Panel on page 84

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting Overview

An essential component of network security is monitoring critical network events and activity, such as security threats, inappropriate Web use, and bandwidth levels. Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting complements SonicWALL's Internet security offerings by providing detailed and comprehensive reports of network activity.

The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting Module creates dynamic, Web-based network reports from the reporting database.

The Analyzer software application generates both real-time and historical reports to offer a complete view of all activity through SonicWALL Internet security appliances. With Analyzer Reporting, you can monitor network access, enhance security, and anticipate future bandwidth needs.

You can create Custom reports by using the report filter bar, available in most report screens in the Analyzer UI. The report Filter Bar provides filters to allow customized reporting, including pre-populated quick settings for some filter fields. A Date Selector allows paging forward and backward in time, or selecting a particular time period for viewing, through a pull-down calendar. The search operator field offers a comprehensive list of search operators that varies depending on the search field that can be either text-based or numeric. Refer to Layout of Reports Display on page 66 to see these items in the context of the Report page.

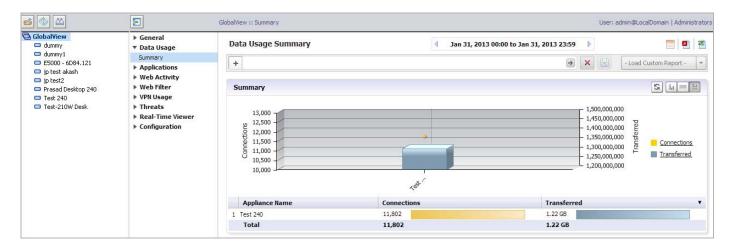
You can search all columns of report data except columns that contain computed values, such as %, Cost, or Browse Time. Dell SonicWALL Analyzer waits until you click **Go** before it begins building the new report.

The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting Module provides an interactive interface that:

- · Displays bandwidth use by IP address and service
- Identifies inappropriate Web use
- Provides detailed reports of attacks
- Collects and aggregates system and network errors
- Shows VPN events and problems
- · Tracks Web usage by users and by Web sites visited
- Provides detailed daily firewall logs to analyze specific events.

Viewing Reports

The Analyzer Reports view under the Firewall, SRA and CDP tabs is divided into three panes, as shown in the following image: the TreeControl Pane, the middle pane with the Policies and Reports tabs, and the Reports pane.



- TreeControl Pane: A list of individual units referred to as the TreeControl. In the left pane, you can select the top level view or a unit to display reports that apply to the selected view or unit The top level view is GlobalView.
- List of **Reports**: The middle pane provides two tabs: **Policies** and **Reports**. The **Reports** tab contains a list of available reports that changes according to your selection in the **TreeControl** pane: **GlobalView** provides a general summary of various functions, and unit view provides specific details. The reports are divided into categories. You can click on the top level report in a category to expand it to view the list of reports in that category, then click on an individual report name to view that report. To keep a category in expanded view, click on the category while pressing the **Ctrl** key. Otherwise, the expanded entry collapses when the next entry is expanded.

• The **Reports Pane**: The right pane displays the report that you selected in the middle pane for the view or unit that you selected in the **TreeControl**. For most reports, a search bar is provided at the top of the pane. Above the search bar, a time bar is provided. You can view the report for a particular time by clicking right and left arrows, or clicking on the center field to get a pull-down menu with more options. Click on icons in the upper left corner to send the report to a PDF or UDP file. These files can then be printed for reference. A quick link to the Universal Scheduled Reports menu is also provided, allowing you to set up scheduling and other functions.

+	Filter Bar				→ × 🔚	- Load	Custom Report -
Summary 350,000 5250,000 50,000 150,000 5	Chart \		oort Button	Custom F	Report Buttor - 2,000,000,000 - 1,500,000,000 - 1,000,000,000 - 500,000,000 - 0		Reload Data nart/Graph View Buttons Connections Transferred
NER ^{2.} ESO		NEA 2."	TL 15."	R.2			
Appliance Name		Data (Contai		rred		
1 NSA 240 59F1.125	331,899			1.44 G	В		
2 Test 240	16,794			1.21 G	В		
3 Test-210W Desk	2,413			34.51 M	в		
4 E5000 6D84.121	Grant	ו View		33.37 M	в		
5 TZ 210 1C0D.27	3,647			6.7 M	в		
5 TZ 200 W FDC0.29	1,557			6.05 M	в		
7 E3500 7C30.123	4,594			4.16 M	B		
8 TZ 210W 81B1.28	175			2.22 M	в		
9 NSA 2400MX - 4678.126	332			1.49 M	в		
10 NSA 2400 - FFAC. 127	171			1.35 M	в		
11 TZ 180 B3AC.23	315			974.6 K	в		
12 PRO 1260 4280.101	248			857.53 K	в		
13 TZ 150 W 29B1.25	287			664.36 K	в		
14 TZ 180 W 39F8.21	148			318.05 K	в		
15 NSA 240 5A09.124	1,128			230.18 K	в		
16 TZ 220 - 4370	117			8.91 K	в		
Total	372,604			2.75 GB			

Report generated for timezone: Pacific Standard Time
 Report owner: System@LocalDomain

The SonicWALL Analyzer reporting module provides the following configurable reports under the Firewall and SRA tabs:

Table 1	Firewall	Reports
---------	----------	---------

Data Usage*	Provides an overall data usage report.
User Activity Reports	Produces a Detail report of user activity.
Applications*	Provides information on application access and firewall reports
Web Activity*	Provides Web usage reports, including initiators and sites.
Web Filter*	Provides web filter event reports, including by initiators, by sites, and by category.
VPN Usage*	Provides VPN usage reports on policies, services, and initiators.
Threats (Summary Only)	Access attempts by appliance.

Intrusions	Provides event reports about intrusion prevention, targets, initiators, as well as detailed timelines.
GAV	Provides reporting on virus attacks blocked.
Anti-Spyware	Provides reporting on attempts to install spyware.
Attacks	Provides event reports about attacks, targets, and initiators,
Authentication	Provides login reports.
Analyzers	Provides a detailed analysis of logs or activities.
Configuration	Configures settings for Summarizer and Log Analyzers.
Events	Creates, configures, and displays alerts.
Custom Report	Provides Internet Activity and Website Filtering reports with details from raw data Custom Reports are only available at the unit level.
* Multi-Unit Report Available	Provides a high-level activity summary for multiple units.



All reports displayed in the **Firewall > Reports** tab are also available in the Universal Scheduled Reports. However, the By Initiator and By Site reports related to Web Activity are available only as Scheduled Reports and are not displayed in the **Firewall > Reports** tab.

General	Provides general unit and license status.
Data Usage*	Provides an overall data usage report.
User Activity Reports	Produces a Detail report of user activity.
Access Method	Provides information on application access and firewall reports
Authentication	Provides login reports.
WAF*	Provides Web Application Usage (WAF) usage reports.
Connections*	Provides web filter event reports.
Analyzers	Provides a detailed analysis of logs or activities.
Events	Used to configure and view Alerts.
Custom Report	Provides Internet Activity and Website Filtering reports with details from raw data Custom Reports are only available at the unit level.
* Multi-Unit Report Available	Provides a high-level activity summary for multiple units.

Table 2SRA Reports

Table 3 CDP Reports

General	Provides general unit and license status.
Multi-unit Summary Reports	Provide a high-level summary of disk capacity.
Capacity	Provides a report on disk capacity for an individual appliance.
Backup Activity	Provides a report on backup activity, including top agents and top file extensions backed up.

Navigating Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting is a robust and powerful tool you can use to view detailed reports for individual SonicWALL appliances.

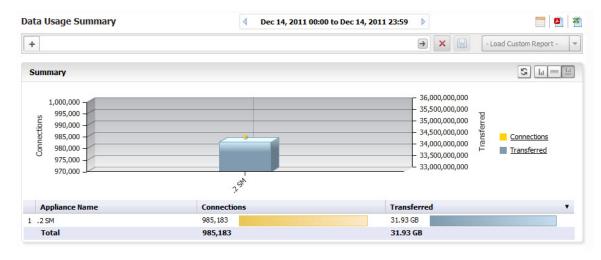
This section describes each view and what to consider when making changes. It also describes the Search Bar and display options for interactive reports, as well as other enhancements provided in Dell SonicWALL Analyzer. See the following sections:

- Global Views on page 63
- Unit View on page 64
- Layout of Reports Display on page 66
- Setting a Date or Date Range on page 68
- Adding Filters on page 72
- Report Data Container on page 76
- Drilling Down on page 77
- Scheduling Reports on page 75

Global Views

From the Global view of the Firewall Panel, Summary reports are available for all SonicWALL appliances connected to Dell SonicWALL Analyzer. The Summary provides a high level report for all appliances. More detail is available from the Unit view.

To open the Global view, click the My Reports view icon in the upper-left corner of the left pane.



Summary pages are available for the major functions on the middle pane. By default, they display both the Chart View and Grid View. You can use the toggle buttons to the right to display either view, or both.

Note The selected Chart of Grid view remains in effect only for the specified screen. Changing screens defaults back to the Chart and Grid View.

Unit View

The Unit view provides a detailed report for the selected SonicWALL appliance.

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer provides interactive reports that create a clear and visually pleasing display of information. You can control the way the information is displayed by adjusting the settings through toggles that allow you to display a graphical chart, a grid view containing the information in tabular format, or both (default). Reports are scheduled and configured in the Universal Scheduled Reports settings. For more information, refer to Using the Universal Scheduled Reports Application on page 34.

The Reports tab provides a list of available Reports. Click on the type of report to expand the list items and view the available reports in that screen group.



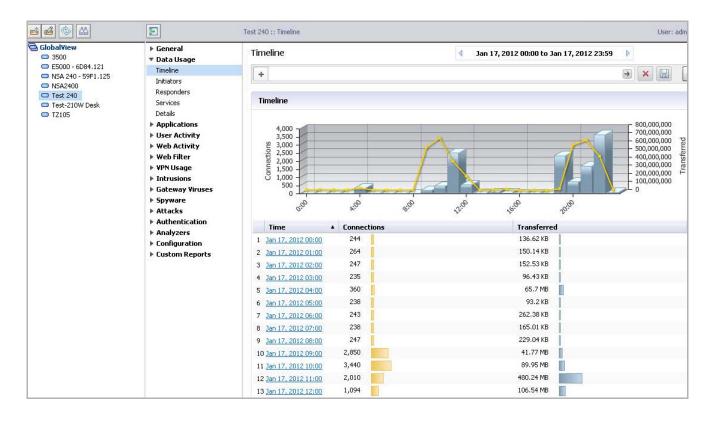
At times, you might wish to see multiple screen groups at the same time. Ctrl-click to keep a previously-expanded topic from collapsing when you select a new report category. For example, you might want to view Data Usage, Applications, and Intrusions simultaneously, to see what detail sections are available. Control-click on these entries to see all the screen groups under these entries simultaneously.

▶ General	
🔻 Data Usage	
Timeline	
Initiators	
Responders	
Services	
Details	
 Applications 	
Data Usage	
Detected	
Blocked	
Categories	
Initiators	
Timeline	
▼ User Activity	
Details	
▼ Web Activity	
Categories	
Sites	
Initiators	
Timeline	
Details	
Web Filter	
VPN Usage	
Intrusions	
Gateway Viruses	
Spyware	
Attacks	
Authentication	
Analyzers	0
Configuration	õ
	-

The reports available are usually the reports that appear as sections in the Details view. The Details entry is a shortcut to a view of all the available reports.

To access the Reports, use the following steps:

- **Step 1** Click on the desired tab at the top of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer interface.
- **Step 2** To open the Unit view, click on a device in the TreeControl pane.
- **Step 3** Click on the desired report in the list of reports in the middle pane.



The default view of a root-level report always shows the chart and grid view of the report. The Sections displayed in the Grid View depend on the Report item selected and the filters applied to it. Additional information can be displayed by mousing over certain elements of the Report.

ata Usage	4 Dec 14, 2011 00:00	to Dec 14, 2011 23:59						
+		•	× 🗔 - Load Custom Report - 💌					
Applications								
		HTTP - GUARDED						
	Flash Video (FLV) - GUARDED Shockwave Flash (SWF) - LOW							
		SSL - LOW						
	Image - LOW							
	Archive - LOW							
		Document - LOW						
		Others						
Application	Threat Level	Connections	Transferred v					
1 HTTP	GUARDED	88,791	14.01 GB					
2 Flash Video (FLV)	GUARDED	315	1.31 GB					
3 Shockwave Flash (SWF)	LOW	6,143	521.1 MB					
4 <u>SSL</u>	LOW	6,933	493.24 MB					
5 Image	LOW	44,421	449.12 MB					
5 Archive	LOW	167	405.03 MB					
7 Document	LOW	74	334.29 MB					
B <u>SSH</u>	ELEVATED	946	333.77 MB					
9 <u>FTP</u>	GUARDED	299	255.9 MB					
10 Executable	LOW	64	245.36 MB					
11 <u>MP3</u>	LOW	43	234.01 MB					
12 MPEG-4	LOW	81	173.7 MB					
13 <u>Gmail (Google Mail)</u>	GUARDED	448	93.23 MB					
14 <u>Google Plus</u>	GUARDED	551	65.99 MB					
15 WebEx	GUARDED	623	62.61 MB					
16 Facebook	GUARDED	3,131	60.86 MB					
17 Potential Ultrasurf/Freegate	HIGH	145	40.67 MB					
18 <u>IDM</u>	GUARDED	96	36.75 MB					
Total		163,296	19.1 GB					

Note As you navigate the Firewall panel with a single SonicWALL appliance selected and apply filter settings, your filter settings remain in effect throughout the session. To remove filter settings, click **Remove Filters** on the Search bar. (Refer to the graphic in Layout of Reports Display on page 66.)

Layout of Reports Display

The Report Display is comprised of the following areas:

- The Filter Bar area that includes the Time Bar, Export buttons and Custom Reports buttons, and data filter functions
- Report Data Container, containing the Chart and/or Grid Views

+	Filter Bar		→ >		- Load Custom Report -
Summary		Save Report Buttor	Custom Report	Button	
so 250,000 200,000 150,000 50,000 0	Chart V	11. 11. 11. 11.	- 1,500, - 1,000, - 500,00 - 0	000,000 000,000 000,000 00,000	Reload Data Chart/Graph View Buttons Connections Transferred
16A2. (58A.	63500	BAR' AB"	ALD.		
Appliance Name	Connections	Data Conta	iner Transferred		
1 NSA 240 59F1.125	331,899		1.44 GB		
2 Test 240	16,794		1.21 GB		4
3 Test-210W Desk	2,413		34.51 MB		
4 E5000 6D84.121	Graph	View	33.37 MB		
5 TZ 210 1C0D.27			6.7 MB		
5 TZ 200 W FDC0.29	1,557		6.05 MB		
7 E3500 7C30.123	4,594		4.16 MB		
8 TZ 210W 81B1.28	175		2.22 MB		
9 NSA 2400MX - 4678.126	332		1.49 MB		
10 NSA 2400 - FFAC. 127	315		974.6 KB		
11 TZ 180 B3AC.23	248		974.6 KB 857.53 KB		
12 PRO 1260 4280.101 13 TZ 150 W 29B1.25	248		664.36 KB		
13 TZ 150 W 2981.25	148		318.05 KB		
14 12 180 W 39F8.21 15 NSA 240 5A09.124	1,128		230, 18 KB		
15 NSA 240 5A09, 124 16 TZ 220 - 4370	1,120		8.91 KB		
Total	372,604		2.75 GB		

The figure that follows shows the layout of the Report.

The Report contains the following areas:

- The Date Selector Bar
- The Filter Bar



- Export Options, including:
 - Schedule Report Button: brings up the Universal Scheduled Reports menus
 - Export to CSV
 - Export to PDF
- Save button
- Load Custom Report button

• Report Data Container. The Report Data Container consists of the Chart View and the Grid View, the Show Chart, Show Grid, and Show Chart and Grid toggle buttons, and the Reload Data button.

Note The Chart view is clickable. You can drill down to Detail sections simply by clicking on areas of interest in the bar-chart or pie-chart.

The Date Selector

The **Date Selector** allows you to generate a report for only a specific date and time range. Use the right and left quick-link arrows to move backward and forward in time, a day at a time. Clicking the time field on the Date Selector brings up a pull-down menu that allows you to customize your time and date ranges.

Setting a Date or Date Range

By default, summary reports display only information for a single date. However, by using the **Time Selector** pull-down menu, you can fine-tune the time, date, or range of times and dates you want to see. Over-time reports display information over a date range.

Selecting a Date and Time

The **Time Selector** allows you to specify any time or date interval desired, whether by day, or in hour/minute intervals. To select a single date for a report, either use the Date Selector bar and the left and right arrows to page through reports by date, or click on the displayed date field in the Time Selector to display the pull-down schedule menu.

tart Date Last 1 Hour					
	5	-			
Dec 15, 20 Last 12 hou	rs	* :	mm	0	*
nd Date Today					
Dec 15, 20 Yesterday		* :	mm	59	*
Last Week					
20 Custom					
			1		ansfe

You can select from:

- Last 1 hour
- Last 6 hours
- Last 12 hours
- Today 00:00 to 23:59

- Yesterday 00:00 to 23:59
- Last Week the previous 7 days, from 00:00 to 23:59
- Custom a custom time and date range

In the pull-down schedule menu, you can specify a recent time snapshot, or click **Custom** to select the starting and ending dates and times. The **Custom** option allows you to select a specific time and date or range from the **Interval** menu.

Step 1 To set up a custom time range, click in the Time Selector Bar. The Interval pull-down menu appears.

In the Interval menu, you can either set the date manually or by using the pull-down calendar. In the calendar, you can set the month by clicking the desired dates. If no data is available for a specific date, that date is not available (grayed out).

Interval Cus	tom			•				
Start Date								
Sep 29, 2011	•	Sep	temb	per	2011	÷	►	0
End Date	5	м	т	w	т	F	5	1
Sep 29, 2011					1	2	3	59
Rows	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	2
20 🔻	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	
	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	
Enable Serve	25	26	27	28	29	30		
WARNING: Select					_	_		report

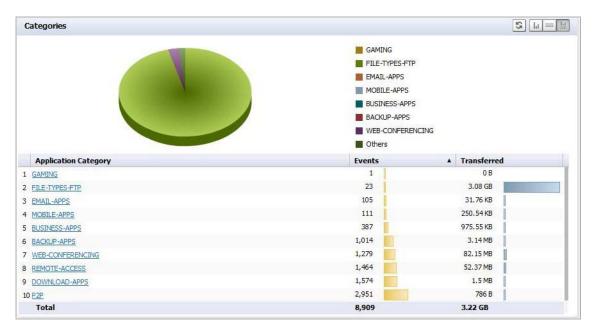
- Step 2 Set a specific start and ending time by specifying hours and minutes you want to monitor. The default for a date is an interval starting at hour 0 minute 0 (midnight) and ending at 23:59 (11:59 PM).
- Step 3 The Interval menu also lets you set how many lines of information appears in the graph view. Click the date, and when the Interval pull-down appears, specify the number of rows. Select 5, 10, 20, 50, or 100 from the Rows pull-down list to limit the display to a the specified number of lines, for easier viewing.
- Step 4 Click OK to generate the report.

Report data is sorted and ranked according to how many rows are displayed. By specifying a limited number of rows to be displayed in the graph section of the Report, rankings applies only to the data in those rows. If you reverse the sort order by clicking on the column bar, only the displayed items are re-sorted.

To re-sort according to all collected data in the database, click **Enable Server Side Sort** on the pull-down menu. The ranking of the grid items then reflects all data from the total entries.

By default, the Client-side Sort is used that sorts only the currently viewable data that was retrieved the first time the data base was clicked on.

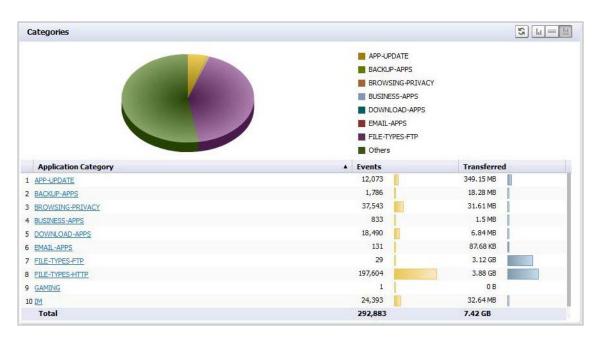
For example, the snapshot that follows shows data displayed only as it pertains to ten rows.



S h = h Categories FILE-TYPES-FTP MULTIMEDIA PROTOCOLS FILE-TYPES-HTTP APP-UPDATE MISC-APPS SOCIAL-NETWORKING Others A Transferred Application Category Events 1 FILE-TYPES-FTP 23 3.08 GB 2 WEB-CONFERENCING 1,279 82.15 MB 52.37 MB 1,464 3 REMOTE-ACCESS 6,466 61.59 MB 4 WEBMAIL 6,498 179.34 MB 5 APP-UPDATE 21,289 2.37 GB 6 MULTIMEDIA 7 SOCIAL-NETWORKING 21,592 107.46 MB 8 MISC-APPS 58,723 107.65 MB 113,489 1.32 GB 9 FILE-TYPES-HTTP 534,412 1.62 GB **10 PROTOCOLS** Total 765,235 8.97 GB

If you re-rank the column to see the lowest number of hits, it ranks only the items displayed in the ten rows you selected.

Use **Enable Server Side Sort** to sort data based on all underlying data records, not the client-side sort. Server side Sort retrieves current data from the back end database. Client-side sort merely rearranges the data already retrieved. You can still constrain your display to 10 rows, but the display are re-sorted based on the total data collected in the back-end database, and not just on the data previously displayed.



Export Results

The Export Results icons allow you to save a report in either PDF or Excel format.



These buttons provide the following export options:

- Export to PDF: This button allows you to save the displayed report data to a PDF file. The PDF can export a maximum of 2500 rows.
- Export to CSV: This button allows you to send the report to a file in Microsoft Excel Comma Separated Value (CSV) format. Excel can export a maximum of 10,000 rows.

To print a report, export it to PDF, using **Export to PDF**, then print out the PDF file.

If a very large Report file, such as a system log, is being exported, the number of lines that can be saved is limited. When you click the icon, a message like the following appears:

Export Options	×
• Export current screen	
C Export all rows (max 2,500)	
OK Cancel	

Select whether to print only the currently-displayed screen, or the maximum number of rows.

The Filter Bar

The Filter Bar provides filtering functions to narrow search results, to view subsets of report data.

+	×
	Go Button
Add Filter	Remove Filters

The Filter Bar is at the top of the Report. It contains **Add Filter (+)** for adding filters and **Go** to apply filters, as well as **Clear Filter** to clear all filters.

Using the Filter Bar allows you to view subsets of the report data, based on a set of pre-defined filters.

Adding Filters

Filters can be added in two ways, either explicitly through the Filter Bar, or implicitly by clicking on the hyperlinks in the grid sections of a displayed report. As hyperlinks are clicked, those link criteria are added to the Filter bar as if it was added explicitly. Refer to Adding Filters Implicitly on page 74 for more information.

Use the Filter Bar to add pre-defined filters from a pull-down menu and to specify parameters for those filters. Filter values are matched in the database during report generation.

Click **Add Filter** (+) on the left to display a pull-down menu that can then be used to fine-tune the report data by selecting categories.

App Control Usage	4 Sep 29, 2011 00:00 to Sep 29, 2011 23:59	Þ		🙆 🛛 🗖 🗧
+		€	×	Load Saved Report 💌
Application Application Category Dst Interface Initiator Host Initiator IP Protocol	1. ate. Please wait until it is acquired.			

Filters can also be added by right-clicking on a column entry and selecting the Filter option from the pull-down menu.

Filter criteria are context-dependant, meaning that Dell SonicWALL Analyzer finds the specific filter operators applicable to the entry. Many filter operators are used in connection with a text string or numeric filter input value that determines what data to include in the report. This control uses auto-complete to suggest a set of candidate values, or you can manually enter a different value. Manually-entered values should be checked for blanks, illegal characters, and so on.

Operators are specified by clicking on the default operator to bring up the pull-down menu of available operators.

+	Initiator IP	=	×
		-	
Ap	plications	!=	
		LIKE	

Depending on the selected field type, text string or numeric, several filter operators are available. The filter operators are used with a filter input value to restrict the information displayed in the Detail report.

The operators are defined as shown in Table 4.

Operator	Definition
=	Only data that exactly matches the filter input numerical value is included in the report.
!=	Data values that are not equal to the input numerical value are included in the report.
>	Data values that are greater than the input value are included in the report.
>=	Data values that are greater than or equal to the input value are included in the report.
<	Data values that are less than the input value are included in the report.
<=	Data values that are less than or equal to the input value are included in the report.
IN	Data values that are in the input value are included in the report.
NOT IN	Data values that are not in the input value are included in the report.
LIKE	Data values that are like the input value are included in the report.
NOT LIKE	Data values that are not like the input value are included in the report.
IS	Data values that are between the input values are included in the report. Separate the vales by using a hyphen with a space on either side, such as "172.30.72.16 - 172.30.72.19".
IN RANGE	Subnet data that is in the specified range is included in the report.
NOT IN RANGE	Subnet data that is not in the specified range is included in the report.

Table 4 Filter Operators

You can also use wild-cards (*) in filters to match anything. For instance, you might want to match a User name. You would select LIKE as the operator, and use * in connection with a string. For example, "joh*" would match all users starting with "joh," such as John, Johnny, Johan, and so on.

Using the Filter Bar

Use the Filter Bar to manually (explicitly) add filters.

Step 1 To add a filter, click on the Add Filter (+) menu and select a filter from the pull-down menu. Available Filter categories might differ, depending on the report, and might require parameters. Some filter fields use operators with text or numeric values. Others might have pre-filled values. For example, the Initiator Country filter displays a pull-down list, allowing you to display results based on a selected country.

Step 2 Click Go (right arrow) to add a filter. Each filter must be applied by clicking Go before you can select and apply the next filter. The filter bar shows all filters added, whether added from the menu bar or pull-down menu.

As filters are added, items that have been filtered out disappear from the listings, reappearing only when the associated filter, or all filters, are removed.

Step 3 To remove a filter, click the + next to the filter in the menu bar and click **Go** (right arrow). To clear all filters, click the Clear Filter (x) next to the filter fields.

Adding Filters Implicitly

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer also allows adding filters directly to a drillable (hypertext-linked) column to create a "criteria control," where you can set a value for the filter. Adding a filter to a column allows you to restrict the display to view only the data related to the entry of interest.

In second-level reports with multiple subsections, filters can be added simply by clicking on the hyperlinked data in the report section.

Step 1 To add a filter to a "drillable" column containing hypertext links, right-click on a hypertext column cell and select Add Filter from the resulting pull-down context menu.

Because the filter is context-sensitive, it might suggest a set of candidate values, or you can manually enter a different value. A new filter is automatically added to the filter bar, and the report is updated accordingly.

After added, the filter is added to the filter area of the Search Bar and no longer appears in the pull-down list. The report displays only results restricted by that filter.

Step 2 To remove the filter, click the X next to that filter, or clear all filters by clicking the red X to the right of the field.

Saving/Viewing a Filtered Report

The **Save Report** pop-up menu allows you to save the currently-displayed report with a specified name of no more than 20 characters. You can also overwrite an already-saved report with the current report or overwrite the report to show a new date range.

Saved reports, even if created for a specific unit, are available for all units of that appliance type. For example, if a report for the X1 interface was created for a specific unit, this report is available from any unit: there is no need to create a X1 report for different units.

Note Custom Reports created by a specific user are viewable by that user, and no one else. Domain Administrators can view all available reports. To save a report, along with its filter criteria, click the **Save Report** icon. Step 1 Step 2 Assign it a file name for later reference. Step 3 To view a saved Custom Report, click **Custom Reports** to bring up a menu that contains a list of all saved Custom reports available for viewing. Selecting a Custom Report from this pull-down loads data for the selected report into the Report Data Container. You can also load a saved report from the Report tab on the middle bar menu. Click Custom Step 4 **Reports** on the Reports tab and select the desired report to load it into the Data Container. Click on the appropriate Export Results icon to save a report to a PDF file or Excel spreadsheet. Step 5 To print a copy of the report, click on the PDF icon and save it to a file, then print the PDF file.

Saved Reports can be modified or deleted by clicking on **Custom > Manage Reports**.

Scheduling Reports

You can schedule a report to be created and sent to you in email, using the Universal Scheduled Reports function.

The **Schedule Reports** icon is located to the right side of the toolbar above **Load Custom Reports**.

Schedule	Custom Report 🔶 📔	*
× 🛛	- Load Custom Report -	-

When the Configuration Manager menu comes up, it is pre-filled with the information about the current Reports page. Using this report, you can set up specific tasks, chose the format for the report, and other options. For more information on using Universal Scheduled Reports, refer to the section: Universal Scheduled Reports.

Report Data Container

The Report Data Container is the screen space where the report data is displayed.

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer provides interactive reporting to create a clear and visually pleasing display of information in the Report Data Container. The Root-level baseline report shows the Chart View, usually containing a timeline or a pie chart and a Graph View.

You can control the way the information is displayed by adjusting the settings through toggles or by configuring reports in the dashboard interface.

Reports have a Date Selector and Filter Bar at the top, with the Report Data Container below it.

Detail-level reports are available either by "drilling down" on hyperlinks in the Root-level view, or, for some types of Reports, as a shortcut on the Report tab.

Note Cell data in the report container can be copied by right-clicking the cell and selecting **Copy Cell Data** from the pull-down menu.

Layout of the Data Container

The Report Data Container is comprised of a number of Sections. Sections are usually arranged vertically stacked on top of each other. Each section has a "Title Bar" that contains the "Section" title on the left and a group of buttons on the right. The Report itself might contain one or more Sections of data that are different facets of the report data.

Categories					
	PROTOCOLS				
	IM 📕				
	MULTIMEDIA				
	FILE-TYPES-HTTP				
	APP-UPDATE				
	WEBMAIL				
	Others				
Application Category	Events	Transferred			
1 PROTOCOLS	903,607	35.04 GB			
2 <u>IM</u>	9,756	6.28 GB			
MULTIMEDIA	32,823	3.55 GB			
FILE-TYPES-HTTP	136,892	1.65 GB			
APP-UPDATE	8,422	673.18 MB			
REMOTE-ACCESS	1,971	382.67 MB			
WEBMAIL	4,417	127.34 MB			
SOCIAL-NETWORKING	23,639	118.46 MB			
MISC-APPS	58,163	84.92 MB			
0 BROWSING-PRIVACY	23,640	23.18 MB			
1 PROXY-ACCESS	4,330	17.26 MB			
2 DOWNLOAD-APPS	3,792	17.07 MB			
3 FILE-TYPES-FTP	8	16.81 MB			
4 BUSINESS-APPS	538	5.14 MB			
5 BACKUP-APPS	613	4.18 MB			
6 WEB-CONFERENCING	393	1.65 MB			
17 INFRASTRUCTURE	1,144	1.23 MB			
18 MOBILE-APPS	122	306.66 KB			



Note Root level reports available in the Reports panel usually contain only one section.

The Report Data Container sections either appear as a chart view, a grid view, or both.

The default display mode is **Show Chart and Grid**. In this mode, the data is available for viewing as both a **'Chart'** and a **'Grid.'** This layout can be controlled by switching between three display mode options, any of which can be turned on/off at any time, using the utility toggle button group on the Section Title Bar.

The display modes available on this layout are:

- **Show Chart**: In this mode only the chart is visible and takes up all the available space inside the section container. Charts show a timeline or pie chart.
- <u>Show Grid</u>: In this mode only the Grid is visible. The Grid Display might contain more than one Section,
- Show Chart and Grid: In this mode both the *chart* and the *grid* are visible and are vertically stacked.

Switching between these modes is handled through the utility toggle buttons.

ht	=	1	<u>La</u>
1. A.			

Only one mode can be active at a time.

'Reload Data' is present on the title bar in *all the layouts* described previously. Clicking this button instructs the application to refresh the section data.

You can determine if you have reached the final section in a multi-section Grid View by checking if there is a message about the relevant time-zone at the bottom left of the report. If this message is present, there are no more Grid sections available.

Viewing Syslog Data of Generated Reports

Different types of section data are available under the root-level report. The section level reports are available through the Details entry on the middle pane Reports tab, for some Reports. You can also drill down from the root level report to the second level Detail views, containing multiple subsections, by right-clicking a hyperlink and selecting "Drilldown" from the pull-down menu. The syslog fields corresponding to the applied filter come up.

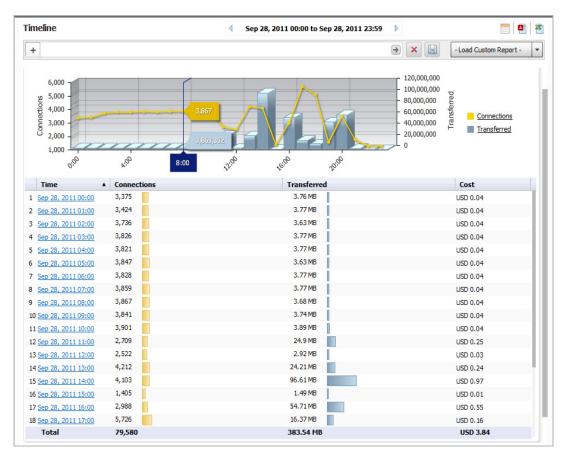
Drilling Down

Sections in the Grid display might contain drillable columns, containing hypertext links to bring up a Detail Report. A 'drillable' column appears as a column in the data grid, where the child values appear underlined and in blue, and act as a hyperlink to additional information. Click on any of these values to drill down to another report, using the value on which drill-down has been executed as a filter. When you click on a drillable link, this filter is added to the Filter Bar.

Drilling down navigates to a new Detail report, filtered by the data on which the drill-down was executed. Drillable reports can display multiple grid sections in the sub-reports, or bring up a System Analyzer view, depending on the item selected.

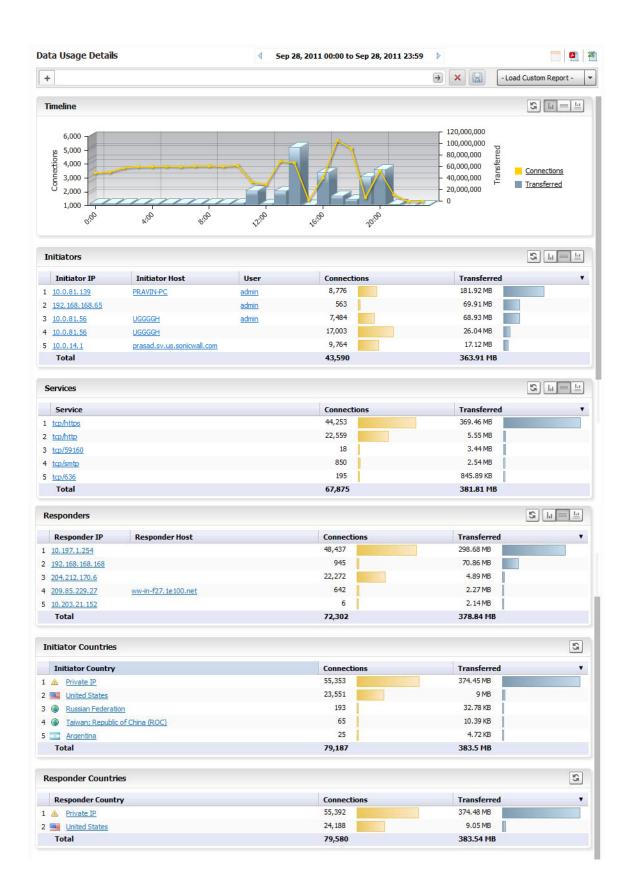
The following example illustrates how you can drill down through the **Data Usage** Report by clicking on a drillable entry to gain more information and filter the results.

Step 1 Click on an appliance, then click **Data Usage** on the Reports tab. A timeline showing the connections appears.

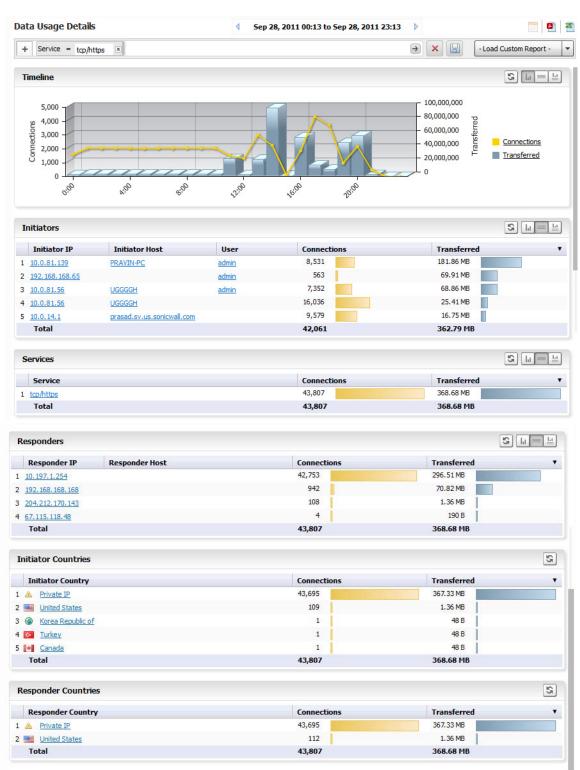


Step 2 Click on a hyperlinked Time to go to the Detail view of the Report. The Detail view contains multiple sections, including Initiators, Responders, Service types, Initiator Countries, and Responder Countries. Depending on the number of entries, you might need to scroll down to see all the sections.

Note You can also apply a filter through the Filter Bar or by right-clicking the entry. Select the filter and click **Go**. The Report shows the detail view applicable to that filter.



Step 3 To further filter the output, to view only tcp/https usage, click the tcp/https entry under Services. A Detail report, filtered to show only usage of tcp/https, comes up. Notice that a Service entry has been added to the Filter Bar.



Notice that the Report now focuses on the filter constraint from the drilled-down column.

Because this report also contains drill-down areas, you can drill down even further to add additional constraints to the results.

+ itiator Country =	Russian Federation 🗵 Serv	ice = tcp/445 💌 I	nitiator IP = 89.178.118.136 🗵	- Load Custom Report -
3.5 3.0 2.5 2.0 1.5 0.0 0.5 0.0 1.0 0.5	hill	1.12A	11 ²⁸ 11 ⁸⁸	160 140 120 80 ge 40 F 20 0
Initiators				
Initiator IP	Initiator Host	User	Connections	Transferred
1 89.178.118.136	MOUNTAIN		2	96 B
2 89.178.118.136			1	48 B
Total			3	144 B
Service 1 tcp/445 Total			Connections 3 3	Transferred 144 B 144 B
Responders				S III =
Responder IP	Responder Host		Connections	Transferred
1 67.115.118.48	Responder nost		3	144B
Total			3	144 B
Initiator Countries	ĺ			
Initiator Country			Connections	Transferred
1 @ Russian Federat	ion		3	144 B
Total			3	144 B
Responder Countr	ies			
Responder Count	ry		Connections	Transferred
1 Mited States			3	144 B
Total			3	144 B

Note Many report categories contain a Details item in the list of reports. This link provides a shortcut directly to the Detail view of all sub-sections of the report. You can apply filters directly to the Detail view to further constrain the displayed information.

The Log Analyzer provides the most detailed Report information.

Step 4 To view the Log Analyzer, go to the **Reports** tab after you have drilled down to the desired level of detail and click **Analyzers** > **Log Analyzer**.

<u>K//</u>
14

Note Because Log Analyzer Reports can contain a very large amount of data, you might wish to limit the amount of data displayed on the page. The amount of data in the report can also affect the loading speed.

The Log Analyzer contains information about each connection, including port and interface information, number of Bytes sent, and so on.

+							⇒ ×		oad Custo	m Report -
										in Report
Log Analyzer										NO.
Time	Initiator IP	Responder I	Message	Service	Src Port	Dst Port	Src Interf	Dst Interi	Sent By	Received I
1 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:59	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Connection Closed	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	1,150	884
2 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:59	10.0.81.56	10.197.1.254	Connection Closed	tcp/https	32767	443	xo	<u>xo</u>	371	1,243
3 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:59	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Connection Closed	tcp/https	32767	443	xo	<u>xo</u>	1,150	884
4 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:59	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Connection Closed	tcp/https	32767	443	xo	<u>xo</u>	1,102	628
5 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.56	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
5 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>x0</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
7 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
8 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	<u>10.0.81.139</u>	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
9 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
10 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	<u>10.197.1.254</u>	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
11 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	xo	<u>xo</u>	0	0
12 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	<u>10.0.81.139</u>	<u>10.197.1.254</u>	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	xo	<u>xo</u>	0	0
13 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
14 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	xo	<u>xo</u>	0	0
15 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	xo	<u>xo</u>	0	0
16 Sep 28, <mark>2011 11:59:57</mark>	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
17 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>x0</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
18 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
19 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>x0</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
20 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.56	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	xo	<u>xo</u>	0	0
21 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	xo	<u>xo</u>	0	0
22 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	<u>10.0.81.139</u>	<u>10.197.1.254</u>	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
23 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	<u>10.197.1.254</u>	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	xo	0	0
24 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	<u>xo</u>	<u>xo</u>	0	0
25 Sep 28, 2011 11:59:57	10.0.81.139	10.197.1.254	Web management re	tcp/https	32767	443	xo	<u>xo</u>	0	0

You can drill down through the Log Analyzer Report as well. Clicking on a column item adds an additional filter and narrows down your results, allowing you to zoom in on specific instances. Some Log Analyzer reports can be reached as the final step of a drill down process. Click on a row to expand the log, additional information can be viewed here:

Time	Initia	Initia	User	Src P	Src Iı	Resp	Dst P	Dst II	Resp	Sent	Rece	URL	Servi	Sess	Durat	VPN F	Cate	Message
Nov 20, 2	<u>fe80::b</u>			56,	<u>X1</u>	ff02::c	1,900			0	0		<u>udp/19(</u>					Unhandled link-local or multicast IPv6 p.
= Pr	iority: 5																	
Nov 20, 2				0			0			0	0							Bind to LDAP server failed
= Pr	iority: 3																	
Nov 20, 2				0		5	0			0	0							Using LDAP without TLS - highly insecure

The bottom bar of the Log Analyzer contains a page bar that allows you to navigate through the report by paging forward and backward, or going to the specific page of interest.

Custom Reports

Specific customized reports can be generated and saved by means of the **Save** icon. Click **Save** to bring up a drop-down allowing you to save a custom report.

×		- Load Custom Report -	-
	Name	Usage Details	
00,	Overw	rite existing	
iO, iO, iO,		s: Use Console > Managem change default settings	ent
iO,		Save	
,00	00,000		-

This menu is pre-filled with a name reflecting the report it was based on. If an earlier report with this name was generated, you can choose to overwrite it or save a new copy, or assign it a different name.

The new Custom report is added to the pull-down menu accessed when you click **Load Custom Report**. It is also added to the Reports Tab list under Custom. When a specific Custom report is selected on the **Load Custom Report** pull-down menu, the button reflects the name of that report.

Custom Reports can also be accessed or deleted by going to **Reports > Custom > Manage Reports**.

Troubleshooting Reports

One of the most common reasons when a report does not display is that no data is available for the selected appliance. There are several reasons why you might see this error. Analyzer displays the most likely reason(s) and gives you instructions for ways to resolve the problem.

The most common examples are shown in the following paragraphs.

Appliance is in a Provisioned State:

Analyzer is waiting for a handshake response signal from the appliance. Generally, the TreeControl menu also flags the appliance with a lightning bolt on a yellow background.

```
Report could not be generated.
Possible reason(s):
• The appliance is in provisioned state. Please wait until it is acquired.
```

Appliance is Down

Report could not be generated. Possible reason(s):

• The appliance is down. Please check the System > Status page for more information.

Report Could Not Be Generated

There might be no data available for a variety of reasons. The most common causes are listed in this message, along with actions to take.

No Matching Records Found

Managing Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reports on the Console Panel

There are management settings for the Analyzer Reporting Module on the **Analyzer Console** panel. A Reports selection is available on the left menu bar that allows you to set up certain tasks in the right Management pane that contains limited configuration screens, used for managing scheduled email report configuration, system debug-level logging, and shows legacy reports.

In this pane, you can set CDP Summarizer parameters and schedule emailing or archiving of reports.

Data deletion or storage specified in these menus takes place after completion of the current reports run.

Reports generated by pre 7.2 releases of Dell SonicWALL Analyzer can still be viewed, but require specific configuration. See Show Legacy (pre Analyzer 7.2) Reports on page 149.

Chapter 5 Viewing Firewall Reports

This chapter describes how to generate reports using the SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting Module. The following section describes how to configure the settings for viewing reports:

- Firewall Reporting Overview on page 85
- How to View Firewall Reports on page 89
- Using the Log Analyzer on page 100

Firewall Reporting Overview

The Reports available under the Firewall tab provide specific information on data gathered by the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer interface.

For a general introduction to reporting, see Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting Overview on page 59.

The Firewall reports display either summary or unit views of connections, bandwidth, uptime, intrusions and attacks, and SRA usage, displayed in a Data Container. Information can be viewed in either chart (timeline or pie chart) form, or tabular (grid) format. The list of available reports allows you to navigate to a high-level or specific view.

All of the reports in Analyzer report on data gathered on a specific date or range of dates. Data can be filtered by time constraints and data filters.

Benefits of Firewall Reporting

Firewall Reports allow you to access both real-time and historical reports and view all activity on SonicWALL Internet security appliances. By monitoring network access, logins, and sites accessed, you can enhance system security, monitor Internet usage, and anticipate future bandwidth needs.

You can gain more information from the display, simply by hovering the mouse pointer over certain sections. Additionally, by clicking on selected sections of a pie chart or bar-graph timeline view, you can view more information or view different aspects of the information presented.

Firewall Reports Tab

The Firewall tab gives you access to the Firewall's reports section of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer management interface. Reporting supports both graph and non-graph reports, and allows you to filter data according to what you wish to view. It supports multiple product-licensing models.

Firewall Reports provide the following features:

- Clickable reports with drill-down support on data rows
- · Report data filtering through the Search Bar
- Log Analyzer

You can view Reports either as Summary reports for all or selected units on the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer network, or view detailed reports for individual units.

Viewing Available Firewall Report Types

To view the available types of reports for the Firewall appliances, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Log in to your Analyzer management console.
- Step 2 Click the Firewall tab.
- **Step 3** Select an appliance or global view from the TreeControl.
- Step 4 Expand the desired selection on the Reports list and click on it.

Note All Reports show a one-day period unless another interval is specified in the Time Bar.

The following types of reports are available:

Global Level Reports:

- Data Usage
 - Summary: connections, listed by appliance, for one day (default)
- Applications
 - Summary: connections, listed by application, for one day (default)
- Web Activity
 - Summary: hits, listed by appliance, for one day (default)
- Web Filter
 - Summary: access attempts, listed by appliance, for one day (default)
- VPN Usage
 - Summary: VPN connections, listed by appliance, for one day (default)
- Threats
 - Summary: connection attempts, listed by appliance, for one day (default)



Summary Reports are not drillable and no Detail view is available.

Unit Level Reports

Detail views are available for all Report items unless otherwise noted.

- Data Usage
 - Timeline: connections for one day (default)
 - Initiators: Top Initiators, listed by IP IS address, Initiator Host, User, and Responder, displayed as a pie chart
 - Responders: Top Responders, listed by IP address, Responder Host, and Initiator, displayed as a pie chart
 - Services: connections, listed by service protocol, displayed as a pie chart
 - Details: provides a shortcut to the Detail view normally reached by drilling down. Detail sections include: Initiators, Services, Responders, Initiator Countries, and Responder Countries. Additional filtering/drilldown takes you to the Log Analyzer
- Applications
 - Data Usage connections, listed by application and threat level
 - Detected: events, listed by application and threat level
 - Blocked: blocked events, listed by application and threat level
 - Categories: types of applications attempting access
 - Initiators: events displayed by Initiator IP and Initiator host
 - Timeline: events over one day
- User Activity
 - Details: a detailed report of activity for the specified user
- Web Activity
 - Category: hits and browse time listed by information category
 - Sites: sites visited by IP, name, and category, with hits and browse time
 - Initiators: Initiator host and IP with category and user
 - Timeline: site hits with time of access and browse time
 - Details: provides a shortcut to an access timeline and Detail view normally reached by drilling down. Detail sections include: Categories, Sites, and Initiators.
- Web Filter
 - Category: hits and browse time listed by information category
 - Sites: sites visited by IP, name, and category, with hits and browse time
 - Initiators: Initiator host and IP with category and user
 - Timeline: site hits with time of access and browse time
 - Details: provides a shortcut to an access timeline and Detail view normally reached by drilling down. Detail sections include: Categories, Sites, and Initiators.
- VPN Usage
 - Policies: lists connections by VPN Policy
 - Initiators: Initiator host and IP with category and user
 - Services: Top VPN Services by Service Protocol
 - Timeline: VPN connections over a one day period

- Intrusions
 - Detected: number of intrusion events by category
 - Blocked: blocked intrusions and number of attempts at access
 - Targets: number of intrusion events by target host and IP
 - Initiators: Initiator host and IP with category and use
 - Timeline: intrusions listed by time of day
 - Details: provides a shortcut to an access timeline and Detail view normally reached by drilling down. Detail sections include: Categories, Sites, and Initiators.
 - Alerts: provides a list of intrusion alerts
- Gateway Viruses
 - Blocked: blocked virus attacks and number of attempts at access
 - Targets: targeted hosts and IP addresses
 - Initiators: initiating users, hosts, and IP addresses of the virus attack
 - Timeline: times when the virus attempted to gain access, displayed over time
- Spyware
 - Detected: spyware detected by the firewall
 - Blocked: spyware blocked by the firewall
 - Targets: targeted hosts and IP addresses
 - Initiators: initiating users, hosts, and IP addresses of spyware download
 - Timeline: times when the spyware accessed the system, displayed over time
- Attacks
 - Attempts: type of attack and times access was attempted
 - Targets: host and IP address, and number of times access was attempted
 - Initiators: top attack initiators by IP and host
 - Timeline: time and number of attempts at access, displayed over time
- Authentication: authenticated users, their IP addresses, and type of login/logout
 - User Login
 - Admin Login
 - Failed Login
- Custom Reports: allows access to saved custom reports
- Analyzers
 - Log Analyzer: provides a detailed event-by event listing of all activity. The Log Analyzer is drillable, but no Detail sections are available.

The Report contains a filter bar at the top, plus the actual Data Container. The default Data Container contains an interactive chart view that contains either a grid view, containing a text version of the information. One or more sections might be present in the grid view. Toggle buttons allow you to display the Chart view, Grid view, or Chart and Grid view.

Grid sections are arranged in columns. Columns can be rearranged to view them from the top down or bottom up, by clicking the up and down arrows in the column headings. You can narrow results by applying a filter to a column: right-click on a column heading and click **Add Filter**.

Hypertext-linked columns are drillable, meaning you can click on the hypertext entry to bring up a Detail view with more information on the desired entry. Detail views might have multiple sections.

The Detail views are usually reflected in the sub-headings under the Reports list that provides a shortcut directly to the Detail Report. To go to the full Detail view, click the **Details** entry in the Reports list. From the Detail view, you can access the system logs, for event-by-event information, or further filter the results. For more information on using the Log Analyzer to view and filter syslog reports, see Using the Log Analyzer on page 100.

Details views can contain multiple sections. To determine if you have reached the end of the list of sections, check for the time zone message that indicates the end of the Detail View.

Reports with hyperlinked columns can be filtered on the column or by drilling down on the hyperlinked entry.

You can also get to a filtered Detail view by clicking the section representing the desired information in the pie chart.

To save a filtered view for later viewing, click on the **Save** icon on the Filter Bar. The saved view now appears under Custom Reports.

To learn more about Custom reports, see Custom Reports on page 106

How to View Firewall Reports

The sections contain the following information:

- Node information—Information on the firewall(s) is displayed at the global or unit level.
- Syslog Categories—The types of syslog data selected to be collected for the selected appliance.
- Syslog Servers—The IP address and Port number of the syslog servers configured to collect data from the selected appliance.
 - Synchronize Appliance Information with Analyzer—Click Synchronize Appliance Information Now to refresh status data about the monitored appliances. This status information is normally updated every 24 hours.
- Getting Started With Analyzer—Click **Open Getting Started Instructions In New Window** to open the Analyzer installation and initial configuration instructions in a separate window.

The Firewall Summary reports display an overview of bandwidth, uptime, intrusions and attacks, and SRA usage for managed SonicWALL Firewall appliances. The security summary report provides data about worldwide security threats that can affect your network. The summaries also display data about threats blocked by the SonicWALL security appliance.

Viewing Global Summary Reports

Summary reports for data usage, applications, web usage and filtering, VPN usage, and threats for managed SonicWALL appliances are available at the global level, through the TreeControl menu. Summary reports are available for:

- Data Usage
- App Control
- Web Usage
- Web Filtering
- VPN Usage
- Threats

Group-level Summary reports provide an overview of information for all Firewalls under the group node for the specified period. The report covers the connections and transfers by appliance for Data Usage, App Control, and VPN Usage, For Web Usage and Web Filters, hits

are also included. Web filters and Threats list attempts at connection. Unless specified differently in the Date Selector, the Summary report covers a single day. Global Summary reports are not drillable.

The Dashboard Summary report displays statistics, alerts, graphical summary reports, and a list of available custom report templates. Displayed statistics can include total bandwidth, total attacks and other measurable information. The alerts list is displayed when the configured threshold has been reached. A wide range of graphical reports are also available for display.

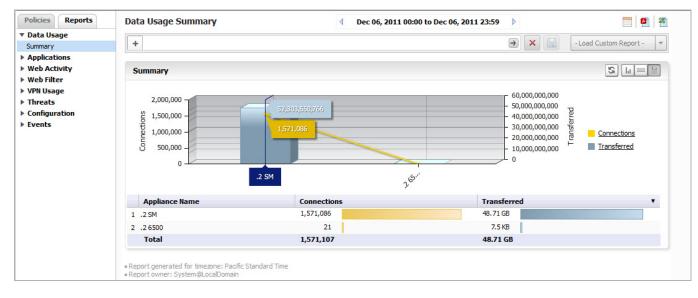
You can configure the **Dashboard > Summary** report contents in the **Firewall > Configuration > Settings** page.

To view the Summary report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select the global icon.

Step 3 Click Data Usage > Summary.

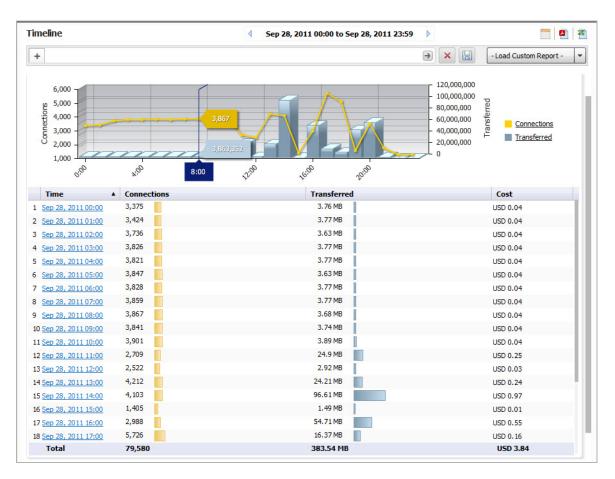
The timelines at the top of the page display the totals, and the grid section sorts the information by appliance or applications.



Unit level reports display status for an individual SonicWALL appliance.

Viewing Data Usage Reports

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- **Step 2** Select the global icon or a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click Data Usage > Timeline. (This is the default view when the Firewall Report interface comes up.)



Viewing User Activity Logs

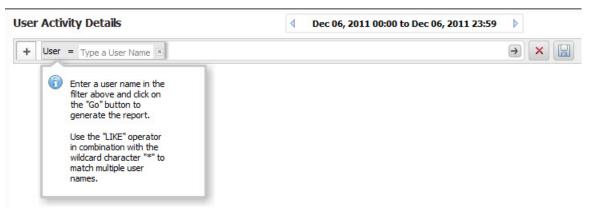
Web User Activity logs allow you to filter results to view only the activity of a specific user.

The User Activity Analyzer provides a detailed report listing activity filtered by user. If a user report has been saved previously, bringing up the User Activity Analyzer displays a list of saved reports under the Filter Bar.

If you wish to create a new report, use the Filter Bar to create a new report.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.

Step 3 Click User Activity > Details to bring up the User Activity Analyzer. The User Activity Analyzer generates a Detail report based on the user name.



If no user activity reports were saved, only the Filter Bar displays, with the User filter pre-selected. You can enter a specific user name, or use the LIKE operator wildcards (*) to match multiple names.

Step 4 Enter the name of the user into the field and click Go (arrow) to generate the report.

The customized User Activity Details report displays a timeline of events, Initiators, Responders, Services, Applications, Sites visited, Blocked site access attempted, VPN access policy in use, user authentication, Intrusions, Initiator Countries, and Responder Countries associated with that particular user.

Data for a particular user might not be available for all of these categories.

Viewing Applications Reports

Application Reports provide details on the applications detected and blocked by the firewall, and their associated threat levels.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click Application > Data Usage.

Applications						
		HTTP - GUARDED				
		 Flash Video (FLV) - GUARDED MP3 - LOW Image - LOW FTP - GUARDED 				
	1					
		Shockwave Flash (SWF) - LOW				
		SSL - LOW				
		Others				
Application	Threat Level	Connections	Transferred			
1 <u>HTTP</u>	GUARDED	53,004	15.52 GB			
2 Flash Video (FLV)	GUARDED	116	589.39 MB			
3 <u>MP3</u>	LOW	45	147.29 MB			
Image	LOW	14,103	147.25 MB			
5 <u>FTP</u>	GUARDED	192	127.46 MB			
5 Shockwave Flash (SWF)	LOW	1,520	117.88 MB			
7 <u>SSL</u>	LOW	3,329	93.89 MB			
<u>Document</u>	LOW	24	75.36 MB			
MPEG-4	LOW	24	43.9 MB			
IO Archive	LOW	36	30.65 MB			
Total		72,393	16.86 GB			

The Applications Report displays a pie chart with the application and threat level it poses.

You can drill down for additional Details views on connections over time (Timeline view), Data Usage, Detected applications, Blocked applications, Categories of applications, top initiators.

Viewing Web Activity Reports

Web Activity Reports provide detailed reports on browsing history.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click Web Activity > Categories.

The Web Activity Report displays a pie chart with the Top Categories of type of access, total browse time, and hits.

You can drill down for additional Details views on connections over time (Timeline view), Sites visited, Categories of sites, and Top Initiators. A Details entry links directly to the details view of all entries.

Viewing Web Filter Reports

Web Filter Reports provide detailed reports on attempts to access blocked sites and content.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- **Step 2** Select the global icon or a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click Web Filter > Categories.

Top Categories	✓ Dec 05, 2011 00:00 to Dec 05, 2011 23:59
+	- Load Custom Report -
Categories	
	Pornography Adult/Mature Content Administrative Custom List settings Cult/Occult Nudism
Category	Attempts
1 Pornography	2,359
2 Adult/Mature Content	8
3 Administrative Custom List settings	8
4 Cult/Occult	4
5 Nudism	3
	2,382
Total	

The Web Filter Report displays a pie chart with the Top Categories of blocked access and total attempts to access.

You can drill down for additional Details views on connections over time (Timeline view), Sites visited, Categories of sites, and Top initiators. A Details entry links directly to the details view of all entries.

Viewing VPN Usage Reports

VPN usage reports provide details on the services and policies used by users of virtual private networks.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click VPN Usage > Policies.

The VPN Usage Report displays total connections for each VPN Policy item as a pie chart and tabular grid view.

op VPN Policies	4 Dec 02, 2011 00:00 to Dec 08, 2011 23:59 ▶	
+	→ 🗙 🗐 -Load Custom Report -	
VPN Policies		<u>∎</u>
	Ian Puleston Home	
	pbalakrishnan-home-vpn	
	🖉 Aria Home	
	NaveenK-Home	
	Eugene-Home-VPN	
	📕 Joey Salanga Home VPN	
	Jason Saxe Home	
	Others	
VPN Policy	Connections Transferred	٠
I Ian Puleston Home	117,950 254.89 MB	
pbalakrishnan-home-vpn	17,592 122.34 MB	
Aria Home	246,138 29.92 MB	
NaveenK-Home	379 16.68 MB	
Eugene-Home-VPN	2 14.01 MB	
Joey Salanga Home VPN	15 13.12 MB	
7 Jason Saxe Home	3 6.23 MB	
WAN Group VPN	600 4.26 MB	
VOIP-LAB-VPN	14 2.08 KB	
0 Joe Levy Home Nets	3 1.16 KB	
Total	382,696 461.45 MB	

You can drill down for additional Details views on Service protocols and Top initiators.

Viewing Intrusions Reports

Intrusion Reports provide details on types of intrusions and blocked access attempts.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.

Step 3 Click Intrusions > Detected.

The Attacks report provides a pie chart and a list of the initiating IP addresses, hosts, and users, with number of attempts for each.

÷			- Load Custom Report -
Intrusions			
		Echo Reply - LOW	
		Destination Unreachable (Po	rt Unreachable) - LOW
		JAR File HTTP Download - LO	W
		Time-To-Live Exceeded in Tr	ansit - LOW
		VML File HTTP Download 1 -	LOW
		PING - LOW	
		Allaple ICMP Sweep Ping Inb	ound - LOW
		Others	
Intrusion	Priority	Events	۲
Echo Reply	LOW	1,053	
Destination Unreachable (Port Unreachable)	LOW	634	
JAR File HTTP Download	LOW	30	
Time-To-Live Exceeded in Transit	LOW	18	
VML File HTTP Download 1	LOW	12	
PING	LOW	5	
Allaple ICMP Sweep Ping Inbound	LOW	4	
Windows Media Player ActiveX Instantiation	LOW	2	
DTMC with Mull Devide and	LOW	1	
PING with Null Payload		1,759	
Allaple ICMP Sweep Ping Inbound Windows Media Player ActiveX Instantiation	LOW	2	

Drill down for additional Detail views of Intrusion Categories, Targets, Initiators, Ports affected, Target Countries, and Initiator Countries.

Viewing Gateway Viruses Reports

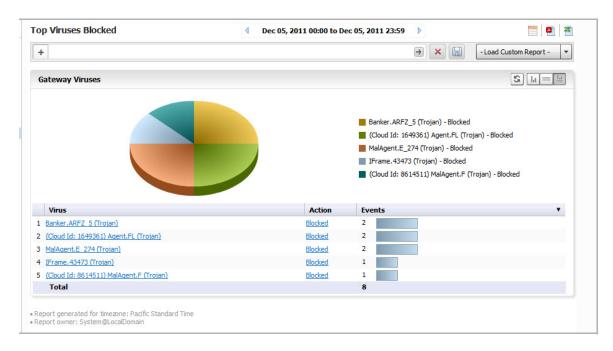
The Gateway Viruses reports provide details on the Top Viruses that were blocked when attempting to access the firewall.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.

Step 3 Click Gateway Viruses > Blocked.

The Top Viruses report appears.

The report provides details on the viruses blocked, the targets, initiators, and a timeline of when they attempted access.



Drilling down provides a list of virus identity, Targets, Initiators, Target Countries, and Initiator Countries.

Viewing Spyware Reports

The Spyware report gives details of the spyware that was detected and/or blocked, the targets, initiators, and a timeline of when they attempted access.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click Spyware > Detected.

The report provides details on the types of spyware detected and blocked, targets.

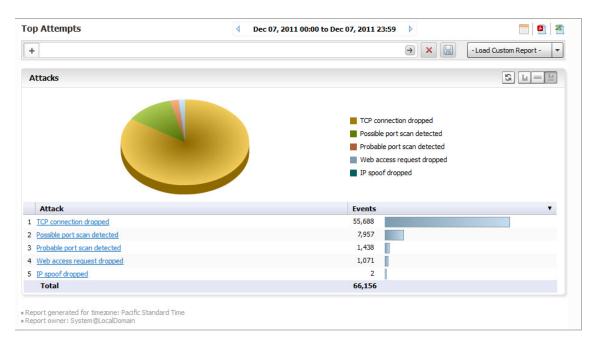
Drilling down provides a list of virus identity, Targets, Initiators, Target Countries, and Initiator Countries. Drilling down lists countries of origin, and target countries.

Viewing Attacks Report

The Attacks report lists attempts to gain access, target systems, initiators, and a timeline of when the attack occurred.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click Attacks > Attempts.

The Attacks report provides a pie chart and a list of the initiating IP addresses and hosts.



Drill down for additional Detail views of Intrusion Categories, Targets, Initiators, Ports affected, Target Countries, and Initiator Countries.

Viewing Authentication Reports

Authentication reports provide information on users attempting to access the Firewall.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click Authentication > User Login.

The Authentication report displays a list of authenticated users, their IP addresses, service, time they were logged in, and type of login/logout. Additional Reports are available for Administrator logins and failed login attempts.

F					⇒.	- Load Custom Report -
Jser Logins						S
Time 🔻	Initiator IP	User	Initiator Host	Duration	Service	Message
Dec 4, 2011 23:59:51	10.50.128.149	<u>SV\kbhaskar</u>				User logged out - logout detected by SSO
Dec 4, 2011 23:59:05	10.197.1.156	ilevy				User logged out
Dec 4, 2011 23:54:51	10.0.37.198	lluong				User logged out - inactivity timer expired
Dec 4, 2011 23:51:21	10.0.81.126	SV\pvong				User login from an internal zone allowed
Dec 4, 2011 23:49:54	10.50.129.148	<u>SW\cdinh_adm</u>	sjc0svdc00.sv.us.sonicwall.con			User login from an internal zone allowed
Dec 4, 2011 23:44:27	10.0.11.241	SV\akarlcut				User login from an internal zone allowed
Dec 4, 2011 23:34:48	10.0.30.208	<u>SV\johnli</u>				User login from an internal zone allowed
Dec 4, 2011 23:33:06	10.0.54.100	kewang				User logged out - inactivity timer expired
Dec 4, 2011 23:33:06	10.0.54.64	MAN1188\insync	man1188.sv.us.sonicwall.com			User logged out - logout detected by SSO
0 Dec 4, 2011 23:32:01	10.0.54.54	<u>SV\jharutyunov</u>				User login from an internal zone allowed
1 Dec 4, 2011 23:30:51	10.50.128.149	SV\esuarez				User logged out - logout detected by SSO
2 Dec 4, 2011 23:22:39	10.197.1.205	sv\manishk				User logged out
3 Dec 4, 2011 23:20:50	10.0.204.72	<u>icai</u>				User logged out - inactivity timer expired
4 Dec 4, 2011 23:19:57	71.59.21.196	<u>sv\manishk</u>	c-71-59-21-196.hsd1.ga.comca			VPN zone remote user login allowed
5 Dec 4, 2011 23:18:07	10.0.80.235	<u>SV\dsounderraj</u>				User login from an internal zone allowed
6 Dec 4, 2011 23:15:38	10.0.25.21	<u>SV\bcruz</u>	bcruz-013851.sv.us.sonicwall.c			User login from an internal zone allowed
7 Dec 4, 2011 23:07:06	10.50.128.149	SV\KBruehl				User logged out - logout detected by SSO
8 Dec 4, 2011 22:55:20	10.0.15.155	ddesai				User logged out - inactivity timer expired
9 Dec 4, 2011 22:45:20	10.0.54.54	iharutyunov				User logged out - inactivity timer expired
0 Dec 4, 2011 22:45:12	<u>10.0.63.105</u>	SV\pmak				User login from an internal zone allowed

Clicking on hyperlinks provides additional filtering for the reports.

You can filter on the Service to view SRA and other appliances by drilling down to the syslog.

Step 1 Go to the filter bar and click on the + and select Service from the pull-down menu. Click on the = operator, and click on the field next to it to bring up the pull-down menu. Select SSLVPN from the pull-down list

u	thenticate	d User L	ogins.			d Dec 14, 201	11 00:00 to Dec 14, 201	11 23:59 🛛 🕨		
+	- Service =		×					→	×	- Load Custom Report -
		нттр								·
U	Jser Logins	L2TP Clien	t							5
	Time	NetExtend Other	er	Р	User	Initiator Host	Duration	Service	Message	
1	Dec 14,2011			<u>0</u>	SV\achiang				User login from	m an internal zone allowed
2	Dec 14,2011			2	the				User logged or	ut - inactivity timer expired
3	Dec 14,2011	VPN Client			MAN1188\Administ				User login from	m an internal zone allowed
4	Dec 14,2011	16:20:52	174.252.10	4.69	ilevy				VPN zone rem	ote user login allowed
5	Dec 14,2011	16:18:14	10.0.204.5	0	jling				User logged or	ut - inactivity timer expired
6	Dec 14,2011	16:15:29	10.0.15.71		SW/slawek_				User logged of	ut - logout detected by SSO
7	Dec 14,2011	16:11:24	10.0.204.1	54	SV\hdesai				User login from	m an internal zone allowed
8	Dec 14,2011	16:08:37	10.0.203.7	5	SV\kurs				User login from	m an internal zone allowed
9	Dec 14,2011	16:07:59	10.0.54.64		Administrator				User logged or	ut - inactivity timer expired
10	Dec 14,2011	16:05:47	10.0.25.21		SV\bcruz				User login from	m an internal zone allowed
11	Dec 14,2011	16:05:31	10.0.15.71		SWslawek				User login from	m an internal zone allowed

Step 2 Click Go to view a report for that Service.

Note For the Duration and Service categories to be present, the Firewall appliance firmware must be at least version 5.6.0.

Using the Log Analyzer

The Log Analyzer allows advanced users to examine raw data for status and troubleshooting. The Analyzer logs contain detailed information from the system logs on each transaction that occurred on the specified SonicWALL appliance. These logs can be filtered or drilled down to further narrow the focus of the information, allowing analysis of data about alerts, interfaces, bandwidth consumption, and so on. The Log Analyzer is only available at the individual unit level.

Because of space constraints, some column items, particularly the log event messages, might not be fully visible in the Reports pane. To view the full report, export the report to an Excel spreadsheet to view, sort, or organize messages.

Log information can be saved for later analysis and reloaded from Custom Reports.

To load a report for viewing, either:

- Click Load Custom Report and select from the pull-down list of saved Custom Reports.
- Click on Analyzers > Log Analyzer to view the current log.



Note The Log Analyzer entries display raw log information for every connection. Depending on the amount of traffic, this can quickly consume a large amount of space in the database. It is highly recommended to be careful when choosing the number of days of information to be stored.

Viewing the Log Analyzer

The log displays information specific to either a particular report or overall system information, depending on the path used to reach the log, either from the individual report level or from the Log Analyzer entry on the Reports tab. Entries in the Analyzer log vary, according to the relevant report type. You can customize the log entries by using the following options:

Show/Hide Log Columns

Use the **Show/Hide Columns** function to hide columns that you do not want to display in the Analyzer Log. Just click the **Configure the Log Analyzer** icon, then select the columns that you want to display and deselect the ones that you do not want to display. By configuring the displayed columns, the Log Analyzer gives a more clean, concise, and meaningful way to view the logs, instead of displaying unnecessary columns that take up valuable real estate.

Lo	g Analyzer					4	Feb	01, 2013	00:00 to	Feb 01	, 2013 23:	59	Þ		
+											(•	× 📄 - Load Cust	om Repo	ort -
Lo	og Analyzer													٢	83 5
	Time	Initiate Initiate	User	Src Poi	Src Int	Respoi	Dst Po	Dst Int	Respor	URL	Service	Si	Select the columnss to be di		ssag
1	Feb 1, 201	10.0.204 WN7X64-		32767	<u>X1</u>	224.0.0.2	5355				udp/5355		Select the columnss to be a	spiayed	ра
2	Feb 1, 201	10.0.201 GDUO-2A		1837	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				<u>udp/1900</u>			- 1	pa
3	Feb 1, 201	98.248.2		1839	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				udp/1900		✓ Initiator IP ✓ Initiator Host	- 1	pa
4	Feb 1, 201	<u>192.168.</u>		1838	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				udp/1900		User	- 1	ра
5	Feb 1, 201	10.0.39.5MVATTI-C		32767	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				udp/1900		Src Port		pa
6	Feb 1, 201	<u>10.0.204</u>		32767	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				<u>udp/1900</u>		Src Interface		ра
7	Feb 1, 201	10.0.97.2ALAGA-5		32767	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				udp/1900	1	Responder IP		ра
8	Feb 1, 201	10.0.59.:MUY-H95		32767	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				udp/1900		OK Cance		pa
9	Feb 1, 201	10.0.204 WN7X64-		32767	X1	224.0.0.2	5355				udp/5355			UL	и ра

Note

"Serial number" column and "Time" column are not part of the list to be configured because they are necessary for any displays.

Row-Based Expansion

Instead of showing all the column information at once, the row-based expansion simplifies the screen and gives on-demand information through a single click.

Log	Analyzer		4 Feb 01, 20	13 00:00 to Feb	01, 2013 23:59	
+					ə 🗙 日	- Load Custom Report -
Log	Analyzer					\$ 25
	Time	Initiator IP	User	URL	Category	Message
Ļ	Feb 1, 2013 13:45:31	10.0.204.209				UDP packet dropped
2	Feb 1, 2013 13:45:31	10.0.201.218				UDP packet dropped
	Initiator Host: GDUO-2A1149		 Src Port: 2218 		 Src Interfa 	ce: X1
	Responder IP: 239.255.255.250		 Dst Port: 1900 		Dst Interfa	ce: N/A
	Responder Host: N/A		 Service: udp/1900 		Sess: N/A	
	 Duration: N/A 		VPN Policy: N/A			
3	Feb 1, 2013 13:45:31	10.0.59.11				UDP packet dropped
4	Feb 1, 2013 13:45:31	10.0.204.209				UDP packet dropped
5	Feb 1, 2013 13:45:31	10.0.204.209				Connection Closed
					14	1 of 3,523 pages 🕨 🖡

Click on each row to drop-down the hidden column information.

Note This feature is only available after you sort the columns using the show/hide function.

Full Screen Mode

Switch to full screen mode by clicking the **Full Screen Mode** toggle icon. This populates the entire browser screen with the Log Analyzer page, hiding the tree control and reports panels.



Session-Based Configurations

All column configurations for the Log Analyzer are recorded in each session. This is so that within the session, users can have the desired/configured tabular view of the Log Analyzer at all times.

Priority

The log event messages are color-keyed according to priority. Red is the highest priority, followed by yellow for Alerts. Messages without color keys are informational, only. The color categories are:

- Alert: Yellow
- Critical: Red

- Debug: White
- Emergency: Red
- Error: White
- Info: White
- Notice: White
- Warning: White

Color keys allow you to immediately focus on the priority level of the message, and filter data accordingly.

Filtering the Analyzer Log

The Log Analyzer allows you to add filters to view user-or incident-specific data. The Log analyzer can be reached either by drilling down in individual reports, or from the Analyzers item under the Reports tab.

To view the Analyzer Log, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Select a SonicWALL appliance from the TreeControl pane.
- **Step 2** Click to expand the **Analyzer** tree and click on Log Analyzer. The saved Log Analyzer report page displays.

+							→ ×	- Load C	Custom Report -
Log Analyzer									\$ 23
Time	Initiate Initiate U	Jser Src Po	Src Int	Respoi Dst Po	Di Dst Int R	espoi URL	Service Sess	Duratic VPN Po	Catego Message
I Feb 1, 2013	10.0.81.5	5353	<u>X1</u>	<u>224.0.0.1</u> 5353			udp/5353		UDP pa
2 Feb 1, 2013	10.0.81.5	137	<u>X1</u>	<u>10.0.14.</u> 137	<u>X1</u>		<u>udp/netbi</u>		UDP pa
3 Feb 1, 2013	<u>10.0.81.</u>	137	<u>X1</u>	<u>10.0.14.</u> ;137	<u>X1</u>		<u>udp/netbi</u>		Conne
+ Feb 1, 2013	10.0.203 RFARZAD	5353	<u>X1</u>	<u>224.0.0.1</u> 5353			udp/5353		UDP pa
5 Feb 1, 2013	10.0.204 KDANG-0	32767	<u>X1</u>	239.255. 1900			udp/1900		UDP pa
5 Feb 1, 2013	10.0.201 GDUO-2A	3814	<u>X1</u>	239.255. 1900			udp/1900		UDP pa
7 Feb 1, 2013	<u>192.168.</u>	3815	<u>X1</u>	<u>239.255.</u> 1900			udp/1900		UDP pa
Feb 1, 2013	10.0.16.2MPAN-01	32767	<u>X1</u>	<u>239.255.</u> 1900			udp/1900		UDP pa
Feb 1, 2013	98.248.2	3816	<u>X1</u>	<u>239.255.</u> 1900			udp/1900		UDP pa
								I]] 1 of	3,257 pages 🕨 💌

Note Because system logs have a large number of entries, it is advisable to constrain the number of entries displayed on the page.

Saved system logs are limited in the number of rows that are saved. If saving to PDF, a maximum of 2500 rows are saved. If saving to Excel, a maximum of 10,000 rows are saved.

Step 3 To add a filter, click the + in the Filter Bar and specify the desired filter item and parameters.

Available filters include filters for Application, Category, DST Interface, DST Port, Duration, Initiator Country, Host, or IP address, Interface, Message, Priority, Responder country, IP, or Name, Service, Session, Src Interface, Src Port, URL, User, or VPN Policy. This full list is available from the Log Analyzer Entry.

If you are viewing the log in the Log Analyzer view for a specific application entry, only those filters specific to that entry are available.

Log views are drillable, and adds filters as column entries are drilled. Click on an entry of interest to add a filter and further constrain the information displayed.

Log Analyzer Use Case

In the following use case, we sort and filter the captured event information to evaluate threats targeted toward the X0 default interface.

On the Reports tab, click on **Analyzers** > **Log Analyzers**.

Log Analyzer	Feb 01, 2013 00:00 to Feb 01, 2013 23:59
+	🕞 🗙 🔚 🛛 - Load Custom Report - 🔻
Log Analyzer	\$15

- Step 1 In the Log Analyzer, click the + to add a filter, and select the Interface filter.
- **Step 2** Type in *X1* to specify the default interface filter.
- Step 3 Click Go.

The Log Analyzer is filtered on the X1 port interface.

► Interface =	x1	×										→ ×		- Load O	ustom Rep	ort -
Log Analyzer															¢	8
Time	Initiate	Initiate	User	Src Por	Src Int	Respor	Dst Por	Dst Int	Respor	URL	Servic	Sess	Duratio	VPN Po	Catego	Messag
Feb 1, 2013	10.0.204	VSOMASL		32767	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				udp/190	0			L	JDP pa
Feb 1, 2013	10.0.203	RFARZAD		32767	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				<u>udp/190</u>	0			Ľ	JDP pa
Feb 1, 2013	10.0.15.2			32767	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				<u>udp/190</u>	0			L	JDP pa
Feb 1, 2013	10.0.98.1	STI-1565		32767	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				<u>udp/190</u>	0			ι	JDP pa
Feb 1, 2013	<u>10.0.204</u>	PHUL-485		32767	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				udp/190	0			L	JDP pa
Feb 1, 2013	<u>192.168.</u>			4044	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				<u>udp/190</u>	0			L	JDP pa
Feb 1, 2013	10.0.201	GDUO-2A		4043	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				udp/190	0			Ľ	JDP pa
Feb 1, 2013	<u>98.248.2</u>			4045	<u>X1</u>	239.255.	1900				udp/190	0			L	JDP pa
Feb 1, 2013	10.0.14.1			32767	X1	239.255.	1900				udp/190	0			L	JDP pa

This allows you to begin debugging, or further investigate use of the database.

More information can also be found by using Universal Scheduled Reports.

Configuration Settings

Configuration settings allow you to set up certain parameters for how data is displayed in Reports. You can set up currency cost per Megabyte for the Summarizer, or add filters for the Log Analyzer reports.

Setting Up Currency Cost for Summarizer

The Data Usage page contains a Cost per connection entry. You can set what currency and the cost per Megabyte.

Step 1 Click Configuration > Settings on the Reports tab.



Step 2 Select the currency of the desired country and the cost per MB.

Step 3 Click Update. The cost is immediately reflected on the Data Usage page.

Adding Syslog Exclusion Filters

Exclusion Filters restrict what information is used to generate Reports. This is achieved by filtering out syslogs (based on the criteria specified in the Syslog Filter screen) from being uploaded to the Reports database. These filtered syslogs are, however, stored in the file system and archived, thus ensuring that all syslogs are available for audit trailing purposes. Excluding data from being uploaded to the Reporting database in this way can be useful in maintaining confidentiality regarding use history, or eliminating data corresponding to certain users who are not of interest. For instance, you might use an Exclusion Filter to eliminate data from the company CEO. This screen is used to specify syslog filters for the unit selected in the TreeControl. A similar screen exists for system wide syslog filtering, in the Console Panel's **Reports > Syslog Filter** screen

Step 1 To add an Exclusion filter, click on Configuration > Filters.

The Syslog Exclusion Filter page comes up. This page allows you to view what filters are currently applied, add filters, or remove filters.

Step 2 To configure and add an Exclusion Filter, click Add Filter. The Add Filter menu comes up.

Syslog Field Name	Operator	Syslog Filter Value	Level	Configure
	operator	No filters configured	Level	conngure
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		No filters comigured		
Add Filter 🕺 Delet	e Filter(s)			
te: The Surley Exclusion Filter or	police only to the systems up	landed to the reporting database		
All syslogs continue to be sto		loaded to the reporting database.	5	
		izer every: 00 hour(s): 15 min(s).		
Add Filter - Mozilla	Firefox			
Add Titter - Mozilia	Theox			
🥩 10.0.89.251:85/sgm	is/editUnitFilter.jsp?			
Add Filter				
Syslog Field Name:				
Operator:	= •			
Syslog Filter Value:				
Contraction of the second s	Unit			
Level:				
	J			
	Update	Reset		

Step 3 Specify the field you want to modify, and select an operator and value. Click Update.

The Reports are now filtered according to the selected criteria. Exclusion Filter settings are picked up by the Summarizer at specified regular intervals.

Custom Reports

You can configure a report with customized filters, then save it for later viewing and analysis. Saving a Report allows you to view it later, by loading it through the Custom Reports interface. Custom Reports can either be saved directly, or configured through Universal Scheduled Reports. You can either load the report through the Custom Report pull-down on the Search Bar, or click **Reports** > **Custom** and choose from the list of saved Custom reports.

Regularly scheduled Custom Reports can be configured through the Universal Scheduled Reports interface, accessible through the Custom Reports icon in the upper right corner. These reports can be set up to be emailed to you on a regular schedule.

Custom Reports are available at the unit level for all appliances visible on the Firewall tab. The Log Analyzer must be enabled for the appliance.

The Manage Reports screen (**Custom Reports** > **Manage Reports**) allows you to view what Custom Reports are available and delete reports from the system.

For more information on configuring and scheduling custom Reports refer to the Universal Scheduled Reports section.

Chapter 6 Viewing SRA Reports

This chapter describes how to view SonicWALL Analyzer Secure Remote Access Reports. SRA reporting includes reports for the Web Access Firewall (WAF) and summarization for SRA appliances using Secure Remote Access (SRA).

This chapter contains the following sections:

- SRA Reporting Overview on page 107
- Using and Configuring SRA Reporting on page 109
- Viewing SRA Unit-Level Reports on page 112
- Viewing SRA Analyzer Logs on page 129

SRA Reporting Overview

This section provides an introduction to the Secure Remote Access reporting feature. SonicWALL SRA appliances are protected by the user portal on the Web Application Firewall (WAF). This section contains the following subsections:

- SRA Reports Tab on page 107
- What is SRA Reporting? on page 108
- Benefits of SRA Reporting on page 108
- How Does SRA Reporting Work? on page 108

After reading the Analyzer SRA Reporting Overview section, you should understand the main steps to be taken in order to create and customize reports successfully.

For a general introduction to reporting, see Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting Overview on page 59.

SRA Reports Tab

The SRA tab gives you access to the Secure Remote Access (SRA) Reports section of the Analyzer management interface. Reporting supports both graph and non-graph reports, and allows you to filter data according to what you wish to view.

What is SRA Reporting?

Secure Remote Access (SRA) reporting allows you to configure and design the way you view your reports and the manner in which you receive them. This feature offers various types of static and dynamic reporting in which you can customize the way information is reported.

SonicWALL Analyzer SRA reporting provides a visual presentation of User connectivity activity, Up_Down status, and other reports related to remote access. With SRA reporting, you are able to view your reports in enhanced graphs, create granular, custom reports, create scheduled reports, and search for reports using the search bar tool.

Custom reports are also available in SRA reporting. SonicWALL appliances managed with SRA provide Resource Activity reports for tracking the source, destination, and other information about resource activity passing through a SonicWALL SRA device that can then be saved as a Custom report, for later viewing.

Custom Reports can be created through an intuitive, responsive interface for customizing the report layout and configuring content filtering prior to generating the report. Two types of reports are available: Detailed Reports and Summary Reports. Both provide detailed information, but are formatted to meet different needs. A Detailed Report displays the data in sortable, resizable columns, while a Summary Report provides top level information in graphs that you can click to drill down for detailed information. By customizing the report, you can then save it for later viewing and analysis.

After you set up a Custom Report that meets your needs, you can save the report for later viewing, then manage it through the Custom Reports Manage Reports entry, or export the report as a PDF or CSV (Excel) file.

Benefits of SRA Reporting

SRA reports provide visibility into the resource use by logged in users, leading to policies that enhance the user experience and the productivity of employees. The following capabilities contribute to the benefits of the SRA reporting feature:

- SRA Detail Level Reports can track events to the minute or second of the day for forensics and troubleshooting
- · Interactive charts allow drill-down into specific details
- Table structure with ability to adjust column width of data grid
- Improved report navigation
- Report search
- Scheduled reports

How Does SRA Reporting Work?

Syslog information for SonicWALL remote appliances is sent to the Analyzer syslog collector and uploaded to the Reports Database by the summarizer. The frequency of upload is nearly real-time: data is uploaded to the Reports database as soon as the Syslog Collector closes the file. The file is closed and ready for upload as soon as it reaches 10,000 MB per file or if the file has been open for three minutes, whichever comes first.

This database is saved using a date/time suffix, and contains tables full of data for each appliance. All the syslog data received by SonicWALL Analyzer is available in the database.

SRA Reporting supports scheduled reports to be sent on a daily, weekly, or monthly basis to any specified email address.

Using and Configuring SRA Reporting

This section describes how to use and configure SRA reporting. See the following subsections:

- Viewing Available SRA Report Types on page 109
- Configuring SRA Scheduled Reports on page 110

Viewing Available SRA Report Types

To view the available types of reports for SRA Web Application Firewalls (WAF), complete the following steps:

- 1. Log in to your Analyzer management console.
- 2. Click the SRA tab.

The following types of reports are available:

Global Level Reports:

- Data Usage
 - Summary: connections per SRA appliance
- WAF
 - Summary: connections listed by appliance for one day (default)
- General
 - Status: number of units in the system and their Analyzer license status

Unit Level Reports

Clicking on hyperlinks in the Unit Level Reports takes you to the Analyzer Log, where you can view more information.

- Data Usage
 - Timeline: total connections listed by hour
 - Users: connections listed by user
- User Activity
 - Details: a detailed report of activity for the specified user
- Access Method
 - Summary: connections per connection protocol (HTTPS, NetExtender, and so on.)
 - Users: top users by protocol
- Authentication
 - User login: authenticated user logins by time and IP protocol. User Login reports combine admin users with all other users in the same report.
 - Failed login: Failed login attempts with initiator IP address.
- WAF
 - Timeline: total threats detected per appliance
 - Threats Detected: top threats detected per day
 - Threats Prevented: top threats prevented per day
 - Apps Detected: top applications detected per day
 - Apps Prevented: top applications blocked per day

- Users Detected: number of concurrent users per day
- Users Prevented: number of blocked users prevented per day
- Connections
 - Timeline: a summary of offloaded connections under the group node per SRA appliance, listed for one day.
 - Applications: offloaded connections by application
 - Users: offloaded connections by user
- Analyzers
 - Log Analyzer: logs of all activity
- Configuration: menus allow setting Report display options
 - Log Analyzer Filter: applies filters to the system logs uploaded to the reporting database
- · Events: these menus allow setting options
 - Alert Settings: provides search functions, adding or removing Alerts
 - Current Alerts: displays current applicable Alerts.Custom

Note You can use the Date Selector to select reports covering other intervals than those listed here.

Configuring SRA Scheduled Reports

SRA reports are scheduled through the Universal Scheduled Reports interface. Additionally, you can configure alerts and filter the syslog.

To configure SRA scheduled reports and summarization, click on the Schedule Report icon. The Universal Schedule Report menu comes up. For more information on scheduling and configuring reports, refer to the section on Universal Scheduled Reports.

Navigating Through Detailed SRA Reports

SRA reports display either summary or unit views, displayed in a Data Container. Information can be viewed in either chart (timeline or pie chart) form, or tabular (grid) format. The list of available reports allows you to navigate to a high-level or specific view. Data can be filtered by time constraints or data filters.

Drillable reports give access to additional information by clicking on hyperlinks to go to the Detail view. For some reports, you can go directly to the detail views by clicking **Details** in the Policies/Reports pane.

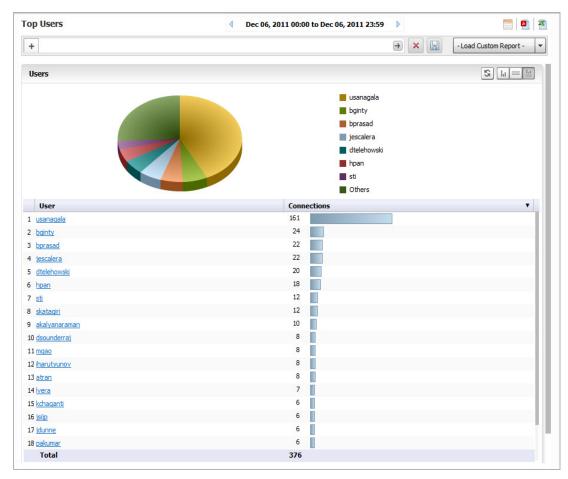
Data filtering can be applied either by using the Filter Bar, drilling down through hyperlinked data, or applying a filter to a drillable data column.

Viewing SRA Summary Reports

The SRA group level Summary report displays all SRA interfaces under that group level node, along with the total number of threats detected on the specified day.

The SRA Summary report is available for Data Usage, Web Application Firewall (WAF), and Connections. It shows the number of connections handled by the SRA appliances on the specified day or interval. The grid-level reports lists each appliance by name, along with the number of connections. To view the Data Usage Summary report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- **Step 2** Select the global icon.
- Step 3 Expand the Data Usage, WAF, or Connections tree and click Summary. The Summary page displays.



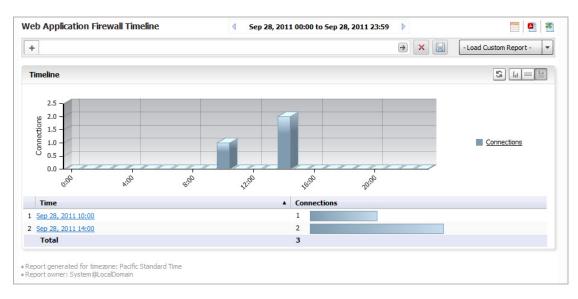
For more information, click on an individual appliance in the TreeControl menu. More settings, as well as more detailed information, is available at the Unit View level.

Viewing SRA Unit-Level Reports

Unit View reports provide detail about Data Usage, Access Method, Authentication, WAF Access, Connections, and Uptime and Downtime. You can also view the results from the Analyzers or saved Custom Reports.

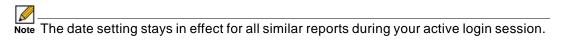
Viewing Unit-Level Data Usage Reports

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select the desired Unit.
- Step 3 Expand the Data Usage entry and click Timeline to display the Report.
- **Step 4** The graph displays the number of connections to the selected SRA appliance during the desired interval. The current 24 hours is displayed by default.



The timeline contains the following information:

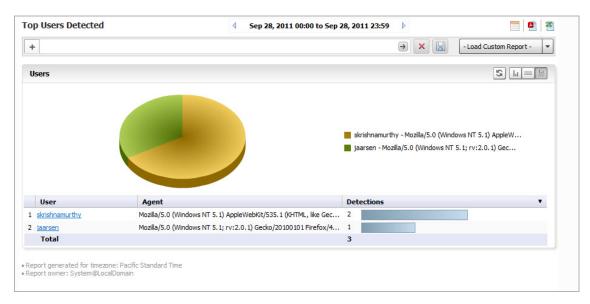
- Hour-when the sample was taken.
- Connections—number of connections to the SRA appliance
- Step 5 To change the interval of the report, use the left arrow to click back a day at a time, or click on the Time Bar to access the Interval menu pull-down calendar.
- **Step 6** After selecting a date, click **Search.** The Analyzer Reporting Module displays the report for the selected day.



Viewing SRA Top Users Reports

The Top Users report displays the users who used the most connections on the specified date. To view the **Top Users** report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select the SRA appliance.
- Step 3 Expand the Data Usage tree and click Users. The Top Users page displays.



Step 4 The pie chart displays the percentage of connections used by each user.

The table contains the following information for all users:

- Users—the user name
- Connections—number of connection events or "hits"

By default, the Analyzer Reporting Module shows yesterday's report, a pie chart for the top six users, and a table for all users. To change the date of the report, click the **Start** field to access the pull-down calendar.

Step 5 To display a limited number of users, use the Search Bar fields.



This report allows you to drill down by user. Clicking on a user in either the chart or grid view takes you to the Log Analyzer.

Viewing User Activity Logs

Web User Activity logs allow you to filter results to view only the activity of a specific user.

The User Activity Analyzer provides a detailed report listing activity filtered by user. If a user report has been saved previously, bringing up the User Activity Analyzer displays a list of saved reports under the Filter Bar.

If you wish to create a new report, use the Filter Bar to create a new report.

- Step 1 Click the Firewall tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click on User Activity > Details to bring up the User Activity Analyzer. The User Activity Analyzer generates a Detail report based on the user name.



If no user activity reports were saved, only the Filter Bar displays, with the User filter preselected. You can enter a specific user name, or use the LIKE operator wildcards (*) to match multiple names.

Step 4 Enter the name of the user into the field and click Go (arrow) to generate the report.

The customized User Activity Details report displays a timeline of events, Initiators, Responders, Services, Applications, Sites visited, Blocked site access attempted, VPN access policy in use, user authentication, Intrusions, Initiator Countries, and Responder Countries associated with that particular user.

Data for a particular user might not be available for all of these categories.

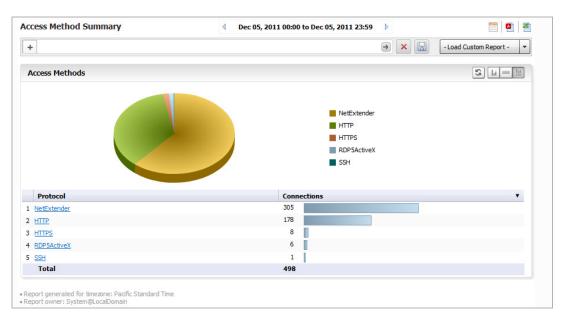
Viewing Access Method Reports

Access Methods provide an overview of the protocols used to access the net. They are available as a summary pie chart or in a Top User report, both of which provide additional information on the access protocol of the specified user through the Log Analyzer.

Viewing the Access Summary Report

The Access Summary report provides an overview of the types of access protocols used. Clicking on a hyperlinked protocol entry takes you to the Log Analyzer view for more details. To view the Summary Report:

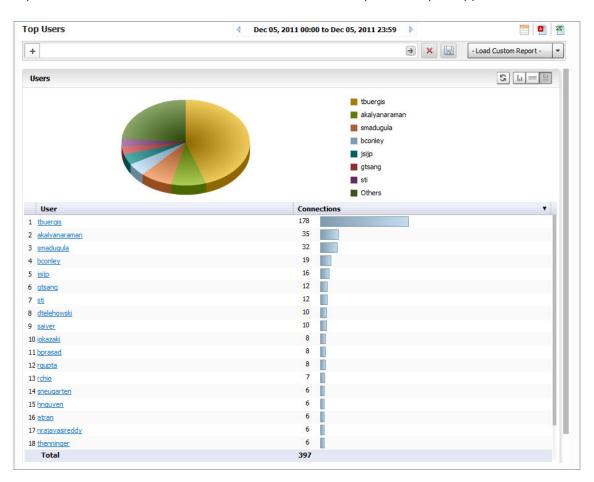
- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SRA appliance.
- Step 3 Expand the Access Method tree and click Summary. The Access Method Summary page appears.



Step 4 Click on a section of the pie chart to obtain more details, or hover the mouse over an item on the Protocol column and right click Add Filter to narrow the results to a particular access protocol. The results display in the Log Analyzer report.

Viewing the Top Users Access Report

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SRA appliance.
- Step 3 Expand the Access Method tree and click Users. The Top Users report appears.



In the chart view, you can click on either the pie chart or user list to obtain more information from the Log Analyzer. Results are filtered by user, and the settings added to the filter bar.

Alternatively, you can hover your mouse over a user in the User column of the grid view, then right click to filter results. For full details on that user, drill down by clicking on the user name in the column.

Viewing SRA Authentication User Login Report

The Authentication Summary report shows an overview of user logins and login attempts and disconnections by time, user, IP address, type of connection/disconnection, and amount of time the connection was established. Authentication reports are only available at the unit level.

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- **Step 2** Select a SRA appliance.
- **Step 3** Expand the **Authentication** tree and click **User Login**. The Authenticated User Login report appears.

+				- Load Custom Report -
User Logins				5
Time	▲^{+ +} User	Initiator IP	Duration	Message
Sep 28, 2011 00:02:23	nkong	10.128.1.120	00:07:45	NetExtender disconnected
Sep 28, 2011 00:02:23	nkong	24.4.33.178	00:07:46	User logged out
Sep 28, 2011 00:08:48	nkong	10.128.1.106	00:21:29	NetExtender disconnected
Sep 28, 2011 00:08:54	h <u>nkong</u>	10.128.1.103	00:17:01	NetExtender disconnected
Sep 28, 2011 00:09:52	nrajavasireddy	75.18.224.26		User login successful
Sep 28, 2011 00:10:03	nrajavasireddy	10.128.1.103	00:00:08	NetExtender disconnected
Sep 28, 2011 00:10:04	nrajavasireddy	75.18.224.26	00:00:12	User logged out
Sep 28, 2011 00:10:41	nkong	10.128.1.116	00:17:29	NetExtender disconnected
Sep 28, 2011 00:10:47	<u>skatagiri</u>	58.156.7.54	02:47:57	User auto logged out
0 Sep 28, 2011 00:12:48	<u>mkerley</u>	99.4.127.100	09:06:07	User auto logged out
				1 of 30 pages 🕨 🕨

Note All reports appear in the appliance's time zone.

The user login report shows the login for users that logged on to the SRA appliance during the specified day.

The Report contains the following information:

- Time-the time that the user logged in
- User—the user name

- Initiator IP—the IP address of the user's computer
- Message—the type of connection/disconnect
- Duration—the duration of the user login session

Viewing SRA Authentication Failed Login Report

The Authentication Failed Login report shows an overview of user logins and login attempts and disconnections by time, user, IP address, type of connection/disconnection, and amount of time the connection was established. Authentication reports are only available at the unit level.

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- **Step 2** Select a SRA appliance.
- **Step 3** Expand the **Authentication** tree and click **User Login**. The Authenticated User Login report appears.

+			€	Х 🛛 -Lo	ad Custom Report -
Failed Logins					5
Time	▲ User	Initiator IP	Message		
1 Sep 28, 2011 07:15:38	king@sonicwall.com	82.31.5.60	User login failed		
2 Sep 28, 2011 11:00:32	randrews	<u>173, 106, 254, 132</u>	User login failed		
3 Sep 28, 2011 12:51:29	mschmitz	212.7.181.137	User login failed		
4 Sep 28, 2011 15:23:26	tbuergis	212.254.245.224	User login failed		
5 Sep 28, 2011 16:04:47	iling	<u>67.115.118.5</u>	User login failed		
6 Sep 28, 2011 16:04:55	iling	<u>67.115.118.5</u>	User login failed		
7 Sep 28, 2011 18:08:44	zchen	166.205.9.34	User login failed		
8 Sep 28, 2011 18:08:46	zchen	166.205.9.34	User login failed		
9 Sep 28, 2011 18:08:55	zchen	166.205.9.34	User login failed		
10 Sep 28, 2011 18:08:57	zchen	166.205.9.34	User login failed		
11 Sep 28, 2011 23:52:00	nkong	24.4.33.178	<u>User login failed</u>		
				[4] [4	1 of 1 pages 🕨 🕨

Note All reports appear in the appliance's time zone.

The failed login report shows the login attempts for users that attempted to log on to the SRA appliance during the specified day.

The Report contains the following information:

- Time—the time that the user logged in
- User—the user name
- Initiator IP—the IP address of the user's computer
- Message—about the type of failed attempt

Viewing Web Application Firewall (WAF) Reports

The Web Application Firewall (WAF) Summary report contains information on the number of connections incurring Application Firewall activity logged by a SonicWALL appliance during each hour of the specified day, or at the global level, for all SonicWALL appliances for the day.

The Web Application Firewall provides the following Reports:

- Timeline
- Threats Detected
- Threats Prevented
- Apps Detected
- Apps Prevented
- Users Detected
- Users Prevented

Clicking on hyperlinks in these reports take you to the Log Analyzer view, for more details. To view reports:

- **Step 1** Click on the SRA tab and either GlobalView for the group or by individual appliance in the TreeControl view on the left tab of the interface.
- Step 2 Click Reports on the middle tab.
- Step 3 Select the WAF entry to expand it and click on the Report you want to view.

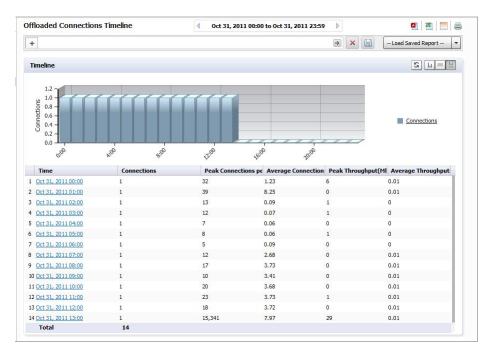
Viewing Connections Timeline

The WAF Connections timeline displays connections to the web firewall over time. To view the Web Application Firewall Summary report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.

Step 3 Click Connections > Timeline

The Timeline displays the unit level summary report containing Offloaded Connections information for an individual SRA system.



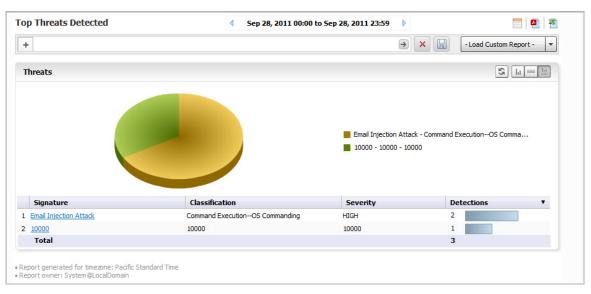
Click on the hyperlinks available in this report to go to the Log Analyzer.

Viewing WAF Top Threats Detected

The Threats Detected report displays the threats detected, according to signature, classification, and severity. To view the Web Application Firewall Top Threats Detected report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click on the **Reports** tab.
- Step 4 Click WAF > Threats Detected.

The Top Threats Detected screen shows the top threats detected by the firewall, and gives details on the Threat Signature, Threat Classification, Threat Severity, in addition to total threats detected.



Click on the hyperlinks available in this report to go to the Log Analyzer.

Viewing WAF Top Threats Prevented

To view the Web Application Firewall Top Threats Prevented report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click on the **Reports** tab.
- Step 4 Click WAF > Threats Prevented.

The Top Threats Prevented view shows Top Threats detected and prevented by the web firewall, with details on the Threat Signature, Threat Classification, Threat Severity, in addition to total threats detected.

	Sep 28, 2011 00:00 to	•	× 🕞 - Load Custom Re	eport -
hreats			5	
		Email Injection Attac	k - Command ExecutionOS Comn 00	na
Signature	Classification			na
	Classification Command ExecutionOS Commanding	10000 - 10000 - 100	00	
Signature Email Injection Attack 10000		10000 - 10000 - 100 Severity	00 Detections	

Viewing WAF Top Applications Detected

To view the Web Application Firewall Top Applications Detected report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click on the **Reports** tab.
- Step 4 Click WAF > Applications Detected.

The Top Applications Detected report lists applications with the most number of threats detected by the WAF process. It displays the Application IP, URI and the Detections in order of the number of detections.

+		× 🔛 - Load Custom R	eport - 🔻
Applications		3	
Application IP		dts.eng.sonicwall.com:443/proc dts.eng.sonicwall.com:443/upd/ Detections	
Application IP 1 10.203.23.180	■ 10.203.23.180 - sonic	dts.eng.sonicwall.com:443/upda	at
Application IP 1 10:03:23:180 2 10:03:23:180	I 10.203.23.180 - sonico	dts.eng.sonicwall.com:443/upda	at

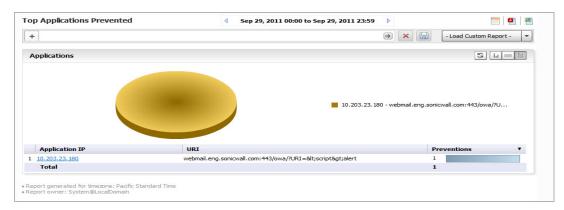
Click the hyperlinks available in this report to go to the Log Analyzer.

Viewing WAF Top Applications Prevented

To view the Web Application Firewall Top Applications Detected report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click on the **Reports** tab.
- Step 4 Click WAF > Applications Detected.

The Top Applications Prevented report lists applications with the most number of threats prevented by the Web Application Firewall. It displays the Application IP, URI and the preventions in order of the number of threats prevented by the firewall.



Click the hyperlinks available in this report to go to the Log Analyzer.

Viewing WAF Top Users Detected

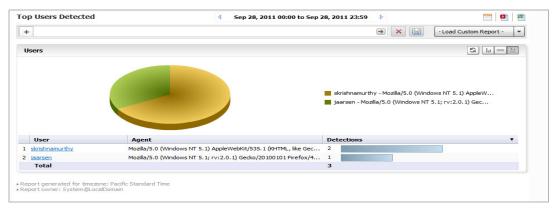
The Top Users Detected report lists the top authenticated users from whom threats have been detected by the Web firewall. It displays the User Name, User Agent and the Detections in order of the number of detections.

The Top Users report displays the users who made the most VPN connections on the specified date.

To view the Top Users report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click on the Reports tab.

Step 4 Click WAF > Users Detected. The Top Users page displays.



- **Step 5** The pie chart displays the VPN connections for the top VPN users.
- **Step 6** The table contains the following information by default:
 - Users—the user's login. You can drill down to learn the IP address of the user.
 - Agent—the user agent and version being used.
 - Detections—the number of VPN connections in order of number of detections.
 - MBytes—the number of megabytes transferred.
- Step 7 By default, the Analyzer Reporting Module shows yesterday's report, a pie chart, and the ten top users. To change the date of the report, use the Search Bar and click the Start or End field to access the pull-down calendar, or click More Options for report display settings.

Viewing WAF Top Users Prevented

To view the Web Application Firewall Top Users Prevented report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click the Reports tab.
- Step 4 Click WAF > Users Prevented.

The Top Users Prevented report lists the top authenticated users from whom threats have been prevented by the SonicWALL web firewall. It displays their user name, user agent, and preventions, in order of the number of preventions.

Policies Reports	Top Users Prevented	Sep 29, 2011 00:00 to Sep	29, 2011 23:59 🕨 🖺 📳 🚍
 Bandwidth Access Method Authentication 	+		-Load Saved Report -
WAF Timeline Threats Detected Apps Detected Users Detected Threats Prevented Apps Prevented	Users		
Users Prevented Connections Up/Down Analyzers			Unknown - Mazilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 8.0; Windows
Saved Reports	User	Agent	Preventions
	1 Unknown	Mozilla/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 8.0; Windows NT 6.1; WOW64; Trid	1
	Total		1
	• Report generated for timezone: P	acific Standard Time	

Click the hyperlinks available in this report to go to the Log Analyzer.

Viewing Connection Reports

Connection reports show the number of connections, as well as throughput data, application and user data.

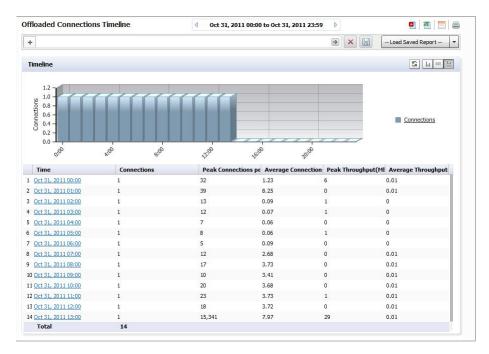
Viewing the Offloaded Connection Timeline

The Offloaded Connection Summary report lists the total connections made for all offloaded applications for one day, displayed per hour per day. The grid section displays peak connections per second, peak throughput, average connections per second, and average throughput per hour.

To view the Offloaded Connections Timeline report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click the **Reports** tab.
- Step 4 Click Connections > Timeline.

The Offloaded Connections Summary report displays.



Viewing the Offloaded Connections Top Applications Report

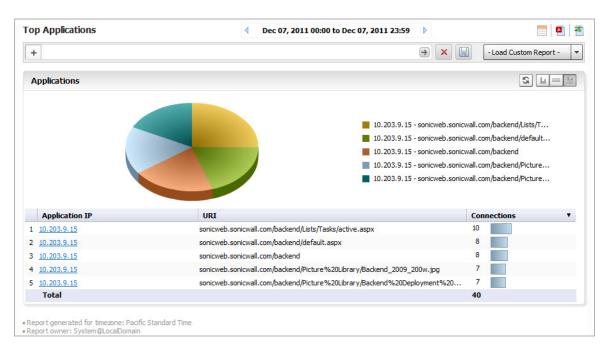
The Top Applications report lists those applications having the most offloaded connections, as well as information about the application and throughput.

To view the report:

Step 1 Click the SRA tab.

Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.

- Step 3 Click the **Reports** tab.
- Step 4 Click Connections > Applications.



The report displays the IP address of the application, the URI, and how many connections were established. The report is drillable on the application IP address to obtain the Log Analyzer report.

Viewing the Offloaded Connections Top Users Report

The Top Users report lists the users who have the most offloaded connections. It displays the User Name, User agent, and connections, in order of number of offloaded connections. The report drills down to the Top Applications, filtered by User Name.

To view the report:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- Step 2 Select a SonicWALL appliance.

- Step 3 Click the **Reports** tab.
- Step 4 Click Connections > Users.

op Users +	Dec 07, 2011 00:00 to Dec 07, 2011 23:55	9 ▶	- Load Custom Re	eport -
Users				
		- Mozilla/5.0 (compatible	; MSIE 9.0; Windo.	
	i johni - Moz ragnihotri -	ozilla/4.0 (compatible; MS zilla/5.0 (Windows NT 5.2 - Mozilla/5.0 (Windows N crosoft Office Protocol D	2; rv:8.0.1) Gecko T 6.1; WOW64) App	
User	i johni - Moz ragnihotri -	zila/5.0 (Windows NT 5.2 - Mozilla/5.0 (Windows N crosoft Office Protocol D	2; rv:8.0.1) Gecko T 6.1; WOW64) App	
	johni - Moz ragnihotri - mtung - Mic	zila/5.0 (Windows NT 5.2 - Mozilla/5.0 (Windows N crosoft Office Protocol D	2; rv:8.0. 1) Gecko T 6. 1; WOW64) App iscovery panections	
usanagala	i johri - Moz ragnihotri - mtung - Mic Agent	zilla/5.0 (Windows NT 5.2 - Mozilla/5.0 (Windows N crosoft Office Protocol D CC 26	2; rv:8.0.1) Gecko T 6.1; WOW64) App iscovery panections	
usanagala 2 mtung	Agent Mozilla/5.0 (compatible; MSIE 9.0; Windows NT 6.1; Trident/5.0)	zilla/S.0 (Windows NT S. 2 - Mozilla/S.0 (Windows N crosoft Office Protocol D 26 ent/4.0; GTB7.2; 9	2; rv:8.0.1) Gecko T 6.1; WOW64) App iscovery panections	
1 <u>usanagala</u> 2 <u>mtung</u> 3 johnl	Agent Mozila/5.0 (compatible; MSIE 9.0; Windows NT 6.1; Trident/5.0) Mozila/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 8.0; Windows NT 6.1; WOW64; Tride	zilla/S.0 (Windows NT 5. 2 - Mozilla/S.0 (Windows N crosoft Office Protocol D 26 ent/4.0; GTB7.2; 9 .0.1 1	2; rv:8.0.1) Gecko T 6.1; WOW64) App iscovery	
User 1 usanagala 2 mtung 3 johnl 4 ragnihotri 5 mtung	Agent Mozila/5.0 (compatible; MSIE 9.0; Windows NT 6.1; Trident/5.0) Mozila/4.0 (compatible; MSIE 8.0; Windows NT 6.1; WOW64; Tride Mozila/5.0 (Windows NT 5.2; rv:8.0.1) Gecko/20100101 Firefox/8.	zilla/S.0 (Windows NT 5. 2 - Mozilla/S.0 (Windows N crosoft Office Protocol D 	2; rv:8.0.1) Gecko T 6.1; WOW64) App iscovery mnections -2 -4 -9	

The report drills down to the Top Applications, filtered by the User Name.

Viewing SRA Analyzer Logs

Analyzer logs contain detailed information from the system logs on each transaction that occurred on the SRA appliance.

The Log Analyzer allows advanced users to examine raw data for status and troubleshooting information. The Analyzer logs contain detailed information from the system logs on each transaction that occurred on the specified SonicWALL appliance. These logs can be filtered or drilled down to further narrow the focus of the information, allowing analysis of data about alerts, traffic, bandwidth consumption, and so on. The Log Analyzer is only available at the individual unit level.

The SRA Log Analyzer contains information about Initiator and Responder IP addresses, Status Messages, User and Services used, as well as the time and duration of the session.

You can filter the log on IP address, Message, User, or Service.

Clicking hyperlinks on SRA Reports takes you the Analyzer Log view of the information. Log information can be saved by using the Save icon on the Filter Bar for a specific report. This report then appears in the list of Custom Reports.

For more information on the Log Analyzer, refer to Using the Log Analyzer on page 100.

Saving System Log Reports

To load the report for later viewing, either:

- Click Load Custom Report and select from the pull-down list of saved Custom reports.
- Click on Analyzers > Log Analyzer

Note The Log Analyzer entries display raw log information for every connection. Depending on the amount of traffic, this can quickly consume a large amount of space in the database. It is highly recommended to be careful when choosing the number of days of information that are stored. For more information, see Configuring SRA Scheduled Reports on page 110 and Universal Scheduled Reports.

You can also click on the print icon to save a log to PDF of Excel format.

Note

Saved system logs are limited in the number of rows that are saved. If saving to PDF, a maximum of 2500 rows are saved. If saving to Excel, a maximum of 10,000 rows are saved.

Viewing the Analyzer Log for a SRA Appliance

To view the Log, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the SRA tab.
- **Step 2** Select a SRA appliance.
- Step 3 Expand the Analyzer tree and click on Log Analyzer. The saved Log report page displays.

Syslog Exclusion Filter

Filters allow you to fine-tune what information is displayed in Reports. Filters allow you to narrow search results and view subsets of report data.

Use this screen to manage the volume of syslog uploaded to the reporting database. The factory default filters are configured to upload only the syslog needed to generate the reports. This can be fine tuned further, but it required advanced knowledge of the syslog and consequently should only be completed by experts. Adding a wrong filter could lead to receiving a **Report Could Not Be Generated** message.

Step 1 To add a filter, click on **Configuration** > **Filters**.

The Syslog Exclusion Filter page comes up. This page allows you to view filters currently applied, add filters, or remove filters.

Step 2 To configure and add a filter, click Add Filter. The Add Filter menu appears.

Syslog Field Name	Operator	Syslog Filter Value	Level	Configure
		No filters configured		
Add Filter 🕺 Del	ete Filter(s)			
	10.00			
te:				
	applies only to the syslogs stored in the file system wit	uploaded to the reporting database.	13	
		arizer every: 00 hour(s):15 min(s).		
Add Filter - Mozil	la Firefox			
10.0.89.251:85/sc	gms/editUnitFilter.jsp?	\sim		
10.0.03.201.00/30	jins/editornitinter.jsp:			
Add Filter				
Aug Filter				
Syslog Field Name:				
Syslog Field Name: Operator:				
Operator: Syslog Filter Value:				
Operator:	= v			
Operator: Syslog Filter Value:				
Operator: Syslog Filter Value:		Reset		

Step 3 Specify the field you want to modify, and select an operator and value. Click **Update**.

Custom Reports

You can configure a report with customized filters, then save it for later viewing and analysis. Saving a Report allows you to view it later, by loading it through the Custom Reports interface. Custom Reports can either be saved directly, or configured through the Universal Scheduled Reports. You can either load the report through the Custom Report pull-down on the Search Bar, or click **Reports > Custom** and choose from the list of saved Custom reports.

Custom Reports are available at the unit level for all appliances visible on the SRA tab. The Log Analyzer must be enabled for the appliance.

The Manage Reports screen (**Custom Reports** > **Manage Reports**) allows you to view what Custom Reports are available and delete reports from the system.

# [Custom Reports	Delete
[Log Analyzer	
1	SRA User Activity	
1	Email Injection Repo	

For more information on Custom Reports, refer to Custom Reports on page 106.

Chapter 7 Viewing CDP Reports

This chapter describes how to generate and view Continuous Data Protection (CDP) Reports on the SonicWALL Analyzer. CDP is a secure backup solution that runs continuously, backing up data from assigned agents, such as servers, laptops, and PCs.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- CDP Reporting Overview on page 133
- How to View CDP Reports on page 134

CDP Reporting Overview

This section provides an introduction to the CDP reporting feature. This section contains the following subsections:

- CDP Reports Tab on page 133
- What is CDP Reporting? on page 133

After reading the Analyzer CDP Reporting Overview section, you should understand the main steps to be taken in order to create and customize reports successfully.

For a general introduction to reporting, see Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting Overview on page 59.

CDP Reports Tab

The CDP tab gives you access to the Continuous Data Protection (CDP) Reports section of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer management interface. Reporting supports both graph and non-graph reports, and allows you to filter data according to what you wish to view. It supports multiple product-licensing models.

What is CDP Reporting?

Reports on SonicWALL Continuous Data Protection (CDP) appliances allows administrators to monitor online status and disk space usage, either globally within a network, or by appliance. CDP reporting also provides detailed backup reports for individual appliances.

The Filter Bar provides an intuitive, responsive interface for customizing the CDP report layout and configuring content filtering to focus on specific times and/or details. Hyperlinks allow access to additional reports data, by clicking on column entries to drill down to the desired detail view. By using these functions, you can:

- · Track events to the minute or second of the day for forensics and troubleshooting
- Drill-down to find specific details
- Track appliance activity

How to View CDP Reports

To view the available types of reports for CDP, complete the following steps:

- 1. Log in to your Dell SonicWALL Analyzer management console.
- 2. Click the CDP tab.

The following types of reports are available:

Global Level Reports:

- · Capacity
 - Summary: disk capacity listed by appliance for one day (default)

Unit Level Reports

- Backup Activity
 - Top Agents: total connections listed by hour
 - Top File Extensions: connections listed by user
 - Backup Details
 - User Backup Activity

Drilling down through the Group Level **Capacity Summary** report by appliance takes you to the Unit Level **Summary Report**. By drilling down through hypertext links in the Summary, you access the Detail-level reports.

Click Backup Activity > Backup Details to go directly to the Detail report.

For more information on how to navigate through the Reports, refer to Navigating Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Reporting on page 63.

Viewing the Capacity Summary Report

The Capacity report provides an overview of disk usage, either for multiple devices through the Global View, or by individual unit, broken down by appliance or agent. Clicking on an appliance link in the global summary takes you to a Summary report for the agents of that appliance.

To view the Capacity report:

Step 1 Click the CDP tab.

The report includes the used and free quotas of the capacity for each appliance, as well as what percentage of that capacity is free.

ummary	4	Sep 12, 2011 00:00 to 9	Sep 12, 2011 23:59	Þ	
+				€)	× 🕞 - Load Custom Report - 🔻
Summary					
120,000,000,000,000		101,643,748,880	,999		
80,000,000,000,000 -					
60,000,000,000,000					Used Quota
40,000,000,000,000 - 20,000,000,000 -		839,539,510,681			Free Quota
0	Π	Services - CDP			
	Used Quota	Total Quota	Free Quota	•	Free Percentage
Appliance Name	Used Quota				
	781.88 GB	93.21 TB	92.44 TB		99.18%
		93.21 TB 93.21 TB	92.44 TB 92.44 TB		99.18%
IT Services - CDP	781.88 GB				99.18%
IT Services - CDP	781.88 GB 781.88 GB				

Step 2 To view the Capacity Summary for an individual unit, click on the unit in the TreeControl panel.A detailed view of the agents and quotas for the unit appears.

Summary	4	Sep 12, 2011 00:00 to	Sep 12, 2011 23:59		
+				→ × □	- Load Custom Report -
Summary					S LI = E
8,000,000,000,000 7,000,000,000,000 6,000,000,000,000 4,000,000,000,000 2,000,000,000,000 1,000,000,000,000 0 8,000,000,000,000 0 8,000,000	Sufr. Sufr.	State- State			Used Quota Free Quota
Agent Name	Used Quota	Total Quota	Free Quota	Free Perce	ntage
1 <u>APP10</u>	0 B	6.35 TB	6.35 TB	100%	
2 SVL0ARCH00	0 B	6.35 TB	6.35 TB	100%	
3 SVL0AGQ00	0 B	6.35 TB	6.35 TB	100%	
4 SVLOFTP6	0 B	6.35 TB	6.35 TB	100%	
5 <u>US0BES01</u>	736.36 MB	6.35 TB	6.35 TB	99.99%	
6 SVL0ADB00	12.92 GB	6.35 TB	6.34 TB	99.8%	
7 SVLOFTP05	40.3 GB	6.35 TB	6.31 TB	99.38%	
8 SVL0AGA00	166.43 GB	6.35 TB	6.19 TB	97.44%	
9 <u>SJC0QV00</u>	271.32 GB	6.35 TB	6.09 TB	95.83%	
10 SJCOSVDCOO	0 B	4 TB	4 TB	100%	
11 SJC0QVDEV00	0 B	4 TB	4 TB	100%	
12 SVL0BIZ00	0 B	4 TB	4 TB	100%	
13 SJC0OPP03	0 B	4 TB	4 TB	100%	
14 SJCOAPPBT	0 B	4 TB	4 TB	100%	
15 MSSQL	0 B	4 TB	4 TB	100%	
16 US0ARCH00	0 B	4 TB	4 TB	100%	
17 CDPQA-TEST	0 B	4 TB	4 TB	100%	
18 SVL0DFS03	290.19 GB	4 TB	3.72 TB	92.92%	
Total	781.88 GB	93.21 TB	92.44 TB		

Click the agent name to add a filter and obtain a Detail view of the backup information.

Viewing Unit Backup Activity

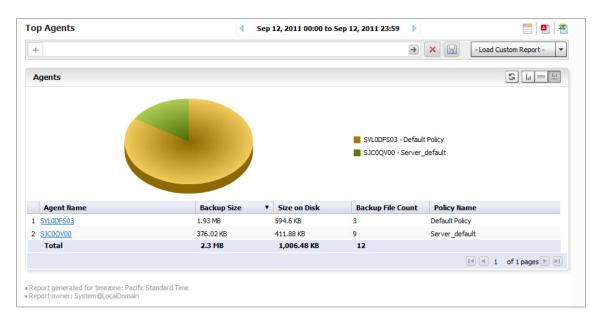
You can view backups for Top Agents and Top File Extensions for a system. These files are drillable. You can also Click Backup Details to go directly to a Detail report.

Viewing the Top Agents Report

The Top Agents report lists the name of the agent, backup size, size of the compressed disk file in KB, and policy. The agents are displayed as a pie chart.

To view the Top Agents report, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the CDP tab.
- Step 2 Click the entry for the desired SonicwALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click on Backup Activity > Top Agents.

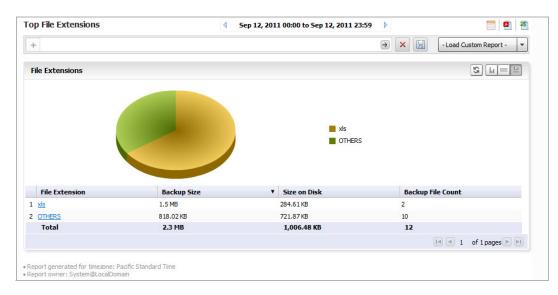


Drilling down takes you to the Detail level report, listing the backed up appliance and listing its backed up files and folders. The Detail report also provides status on whether the backup operation was successful. You can shortcut to an unfiltered version of the Detail report by clicking **Backup Details**.

Top File Extensions

The Top File Extensions report lists the extension, backup size, size of the compressed disk file in KB, and number of backed up files.

- Step 1 Click the CDP tab.
- Step 2 Click the entry for the desired SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click on Top File Extensions on the Reports tab.



Drilling down takes you to the Detail level report, listing the backed up appliance and its files and folders

Viewing the Detail View Report

SonicWALL GMS provides a shortcut to the Detail view of CDP reports. The Detail view includes: what appliances were backed up and when, whether the operation was successful, the agent for the appliance, and the file and folder names backed up, with respective sizes of both original files and folders and backed up files and folders.

To see the Detail view:

- Step 1 Click the CDP tab.
- Step 2 Click on the entry for the desired SonicwALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click Backup Details on the Reports tab.

A detailed view, similar to what you might see in the Log Analyzer, appears. The CDP detail view is not organized into graph and grid view sections like the Firewall and SRA views. However, by clicking the links, you can filter results.

ackup Details			Sep 12, 2	2011 00:00 to S	ep 12, 2011	23:59		
+						€	< 📳 🕞	oad Custom Report -
Details								5
Time 🔺	Appliance Name	Agent Name	Folder Name	File Name	File Size	Revision Size	Size on Disk	Operation
1 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:03	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
2 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:08	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
3 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:14	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
4 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:14	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	CalData.pgo	33.16 KB	1.66 KB	37.14 KB	Backup Successful
5 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:19	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	CalData.pgo	33.16 KB	1.66 KB	37.14 KB	Backup Successful
5 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:19	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
7 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:23	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	SiebelDashboard	40 KB	2 KB	10.66 KB	Backup Successful
8 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:25	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	ServerCounters.	780 B	39 B	4.85 KB	Backup Successful
9 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:25	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	CalData.pgo	33.16 KB	1.66 KB	37.14 KB	Backup Successful
10 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:25	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
11 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:30	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
12 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:30	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	CalData.pgo	33.16 KB	1.66 KB	37.14 KB	Backup Successful
13 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:36	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	CalData.pgo	33.16 KB	1.66 KB	37.14 KB	Backup Successful
14 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:36	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
15 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:41	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments,	CalData.pgo	33.16 KB	1.66 KB	37.14 KB	Backup Successful
16 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:41	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
17 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:47	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	CalData.pgo	33.16 KB	1.66 KB	37.14 KB	Backup Successful
18 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:47	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
19 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:52	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments,	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
20 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:52	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	CalData.pgo	33.16 KB	1.66 KB	37.14 KB	Backup Successful
21 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:58	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
22 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:58	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	ServerCounters.	780 B	39 B	4.85 KB	Backup Successful
23 Sep 11, 2011 23:05:58	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments,	CalData.pgo	33.16 KB	1.66 KB	37.14 KB	Backup Successful
24 Sep 11, 2011 23:06:03	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	IniData.pgo	53.28 KB	2.66 KB	57.25 KB	Backup Successful
25 Sep 11, 2011 23:06:03	IT Services - CDP	SJC0QV00	C:/QVDocuments	CalData.pgo	33.16 KB	1.66 KB	37.14 KB	Backup Successful

If desired, the Detail view of backup activity can be saved. It then appears under Custom Reports, and in the Manage Reports list.

For more information on Custom reports, refer to Custom Reports on page 83.

Viewing the User Backup Report

Viewing User Backup Reports takes you to the Detail view of the Backup report. The Detail view includes: what appliances were backed up and when, whether the operation was successful, the agent for the appliance, and the file and folder names backed up, with respective sizes of both original files and folders and backed up files and folders.

To see the Detail view:

- Step 1 Click the CDP tab.
- **Step 2** Click on the entry for the desired SonicWALL appliance.
- Step 3 Click Backup > User Backups on the Reports tab.

You can save the User Backup Report as a Custom report, for later viewing. For more information on Custom reports, refer to Custom Reports on page 83.

Chapter 8 Configuring User Settings

Configuring User Settings

This chapter describes how to configure the user settings that are available in the Console panel on the **User Settings > General** page that provides a way to change the Analyzer administrator password, the Analyzer inactivity Timeout, and pagination settings.

Change Analyzer Password
Current Analyzer Password:
New Analyzer Password:
Confirm New Password:
Miscellaneous Settings
Analyzer Inactivity Timeout: -1 Minutes (-1 = never times out)
Max Rows Per Screen: 10 Range: [10100] (Applicable to non-reporting related paginated screens only)
Auto Save Dashboard Settings: 3 Minutes (-1:Auto Save not enabled or Range:[160])
Update Reset

To configure the user settings that are available in the Console panel on the **User Settings > General** page, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Enter the existing Dell SonicWALL Analyzer password in the Current Password field.
- Step 2 Enter the new Dell SonicWALL Analyzer password in the New Password field.
- Step 3 Reenter the new password in the Confirm New Password field.



Step 4 The Inactivity Timeout period specifies how long Dell SonicWALL Analyzer waits before logging out an inactive user. To prevent someone from accessing the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer UI when Dell SonicWALL Analyzer users are away from their desks, enter an appropriate value in the Inactivity Timeout field. You can disable automatic logout completely by entering a "-1" in this field. The minimum is five minutes and the maximum is 120 minutes.

- Step 5 Select a value between 10 and 100 in the **Max Rows Per Screen** field. This value applies only to non-reporting related paginated screens.
- Step 6 When you are finished, click **Update**. The settings are changed. To clear all screen settings and start over, click **Reset**.

-	77	1
1		1
P	1	L
-	_	

Note The maximum size of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer User ID is 24 alphanumeric characters. The password is one-way hashed and any password of any length can be hashed into a fixed 32 character long internal password.

Chapter 9 Configuring Log Settings

This section describes how to configure Log Settings. This includes adjusting settings on deleting log messages after a certain period of time, and setting criteria for viewing logs.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- Configuring Log Settings on page 143
- Configuring Log View Search Criteria on page 144

Configuring Log Settings

In the **Log > Configuration** screen, you can delete or archive Analyzer log messages. The Archive process archives the data to the "archivedLogs" directory as per the Archive Log Schedule, before the data is deleted from the database.

Delete Analyzer Log Messages	
Month Day Year November ✓ / 22 ✓ / 2013 ▼	
Archive Analyzer Log Messages	
Enable Archive	
Archive Analyzer Log Messages for: 12 💌 months 💭	
Max Num of Log Message Files: 12 💌 📁	
Delete Data Every: Saturday 💌 at 17 💌 : 00 💌	
Archive Format: O CSV HTML	
	Update

To configure Log settings, select between the following options:

- Delete Log Messages Older Than Select the month, day, and year, and then click the Delete link.
- Enable Archive Select this check box to enable Analyzer log message archiving.
- Archive Analyzer log messages for Select the number of months to archive log messages.

- Max Num of Log Message Files Select the maximum number of monthly archive files kept in the achivedLogs folder.
- Delete Data Every Select a reoccurring day and time to delete data.
- Archive Format Select the type of format to archive the Analyzer log messages. Choose between CSV or HTML.
- Update Click Update after your settings are selected.

Note The archive process first archives the data to archivedLogs directory as per the "Archive Log Schedule" and then the data is deleted from the database.

For UMA deployments, to offload the archived log files to local drive, navigate to **/appliance** interface > Systems > File Manager page.

Configuring Log View Search Criteria

The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer log keeps track of changes made within the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer UI, logins, failed logins, logouts, password changes, scheduled tasks, failed tasks, completed tasks, raw syslog database size, syslog message uploads, and time spent summarizing syslog data. To view the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer log, complete the following steps:

	View Log				User: admin@LocalDomain Administrators		
User Settings Log	Search Criteria Select Time of logs: From:	То:			<u>^</u>		
Configuration							
View Log	(mm/dd/yyy)	/)	(mm/dd/yyyy)				
Management	SonicWALL Node:	Analyzer User:		1			
Reports				_			
Diagnostics	Message contains:	Severity:	All (Alert, Warning and FYI)	~			
Events	Match ca	ase 💿 Exact Phrase 🔿 All Words 🔿 Any					
▶ Help	Word	ase 🔍 Exact Phrase 💛 All Words 💛 Any					
		earch √ Clear Search √ Export Logs					
	V Start St						
	Search Results						
	✓ Show Messages Per Screen: 100 (Range: 10-100)						
	<displaying 1-100=""> <u>Next</u>></displaying>			-			
	# Date 1 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [03:29:25 PM]	<u>Message</u> Appliance 0017C5663E04 authenticated to Web Services	Severity SonicWALL	GMS User	User IP		
		Report data summarized. 0 ECM File(s), 0 CDP File(s)	FYI IT Services - CDP				
	2 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [03:20:58 PM]	processed in 1.0 minutes.	FYI		10.203.23.66		
	3 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [03:19:58 PM]	Report data summarization started. All files have been queued for processing.	FYI		10.203.23.66		
	4 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [03:05:57 PM]	Report data summarized. 0 ECM File(s), 0 CDP File(s) processed in 1.0 minutes.	FYI		10.203.23.66		
	5 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [03:04:57 PM]	Report data summarization started. All files have been queued for processing.	FYI		10.203.23.66		
	6 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [03:04:40 PM]	Successful login into the system by user: admin	FYI	admin	10.0.14.81		
	7 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [02:50:57 PM]	Report data summarized. 0 ECM File(s), 0 CDP File(s) processed in 1.0 minutes.	FYI		10.203.23.66		
	8 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [02:49:57 PM]	Report data summarization started. All files have been queued for processing.	FYI		10.203.23.66		
	9 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [02:35:56 PM]	Report data summarized. 0 ECM File(s), 0 CDP File(s) processed in 1.0 minutes.	FYI		10.203.23.66		
	10 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [02:34:56 PM]	Report data summarization started. All files have been queued for processing.	FYI		10.203.23.66		
	11 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [02:34:42 PM]	Successful login into the system by user: admin	FYI	admin	ktran-10819.sv.us.sonicwall.com (10.0.203.123)		
	12 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [02:23:04 PM] 13 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [02:21:56 PM]	Successful login into the system by user: admin Unsuccessful login attempt into the system by user: admin	FYI WARNING	admin admin	10.0.203.139 10.0.203.139		
	14 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [02:21:56 PM]	Unsuccessful login attempt into the system by user: admin Unsuccessful login attempt into the system by user: admin	WARNING	admin	10.0.203.139		
	15 Jan 17, 2012 Tue [02:21:27 PM]	Successful logout by the user: admin	FVI	admin	10.0.203.139		

Step 1 Click the Console tab, expand the Log tree, and click View Log. The View Log page displays.

Step 2 Each log entry contains the following fields:

- #--specifies the number of the log entry.
- Date—specifies the date of the log entry.
- Message—contains a description of the event.
- Severity—displays the severity of the event (Alert, Warning, or FYI).

- SonicWALL—specifies the name of the SonicWALL appliance that generated the event (if applicable).
- User@IP—specifies the user name and IP address.
- **Step 3** To narrow the search, configure some of the following criteria:

You can press **Enter** to navigate from one form element to the next in this section.

- Select Time of logs—displays all log entries for a specified range of dates.
- SonicWALL Node—displays all log entries associated with the specified SonicWALL appliance.
- Analyzer User—displays all log entries with the specified user.
- Message contains—displays all log entries that contain the specified text. This input field provides an auto-suggest functionality that uses existing log message text to predict what you want to type. It fills in the field with the suggested text and you can either press Tab to accept it or keep typing. Different suggestions appear as you continue to type when the log messages match your input.
- Severity—displays log entries with the matching severity level:
 - All (Alert, Warning, and FYI)-where FYI mean "For Your Information"
 - Alert and Warning
 - Alert
- Select Match case to make the SonicWALL Node, User, and Message contains search fields case sensitive.
- Select one of Exact Phrase, All Words, or Any Word.
 - Exact Phrase matches a log entry that contains exactly what you typed in the Message contains field
 - All Words matches a log entry that contains all the words you typed in the Message contains field, but the words can be non-consecutive or in any order
 - Any Word matches a log entry that contains any of the words you typed in the Message contains field
- Step 4 To view the results of your search criteria, click Start Search. To clear all values from the input fields and start over, click Clear Search. To save the results as an HTML file on your system, click Export Logs and follow the on-screen instructions.
- Step 5 To configure how many messages are shown per screen, enter a new value between 10 and 100 in the Show Messages Per Screen field. (default: 10). Click Next to display the next page, or click Previous to display the preceding page.

Chapter 10 Configuring Console Management Settings

This chapter describes the settings available on the Console panel in the Management section. The following sections are found in this chapter:

- Configuring Management Settings on page 147
- Configuring Management Alert Settings on page 150
- Configuring Management Sessions on page 151

Configuring Management Settings

On the **Console > Management > Settings** page, you can configure email settings, set the system debug level, synchronize model codes information, and configure password security settings.

This section describes the following Settings topics:

- Configuring Email Settings on page 148
- Configuring System Debug Level on page 148
- Enforcing Password Security on page 149
- Synchronizing Model Codes on page 149

Configuring Email Settings

An SMTP server and an email address are required for sending Analyzer reports.

If the Mail Server settings are not configured correctly, you will not receive important email notifications, such as:

- · System alerts for your Dell SonicWALL Analyzer deployment performance
- · Availability of product updates, hot fixes, or patches
- Scheduled Reports

To configure these email settings:

Step 1 Click the Console tab.

- Step 2 Expand the Management tree and click Settings. The Settings page displays.
- Step 3 Type the IP address of the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) server into the SMTP Server field. This server can be the same one that is normally used for email in your network. Type in the SMTP Port number to use for email service.
- Step 4 Enter the email account name and domain that appears in messages sent from the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer into the Sender e-Mail Address field.
- Step 5 Enter the email account name and domain that appears in messages sent from the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer into the Administrator e-Mail Address field. You can use User Authentication for this user by checking the box.
- Step 6 When finished in the Settings page, click **Update**. To clear the screen settings and start over, click **Reset**.

Configuring System Debug Level

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer provides the **System Debug level** option to control the debug messages sent to the log file.

To configure this setting:

- Step 1 Select a debug level from the System Debug level drop-down list. The range is 0-3 where a level of 0 provides no debug log messages and a level of 3 provides the maximum number of debug messages.
- Step 2 When finished in the Settings page, click **Update**. To clear the screen settings and start over, click **Reset**.

Enforcing Password Security

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer supports enforced password rotation for enhanced security compliance.

To enable and configure enforced password rotation:

- Step 1 Select Enforce Password Security.
- Step 2 In the Number of days to force password change field, enter a value. The default is 90. Dell SonicWALL Analyzer prompts the administrator to change the admin account password after the specified number of days.
- Step 3 When finished in the Settings page, click **Update**. To clear the screen settings and start over, click **Reset**.

Show Legacy (pre Analyzer 7.2) Reports

After the upgrade to Analyzer 7.2 new reports can only be generated using the new Analyzer reporting infrastructure. Old Viewpoint reports can be viewed under legacy reports session (it is not possible to view both 7.2 and pre-7.2 reports in the same session). Reports generated by pre-7.2 releases of SonicWALL Analyzer are still available for viewing. Analyzer 7.2 Reporting is not compatible with earlier versions, but reports generated by earlier versions are still accessible under the Analyzer reporting Infrastructure.

To view legacy reports, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Select Show Legacy (pre Analyzer 7.2) Reports.
- Step 2 Log out of SonicWALL Analyzer.
- Step 3 Log back in to SonicWALL Analyzer using administrator credentials.

Synchronizing Model Codes

The Sync Model Codes feature accommodates new SonicWALL product introductions without the need for Analyzer update. When SonicWALL updates the corporate server (MySonicWALL) with a new product code, it then becomes available to Analyzer. The task is scheduled to run every 24 hours and is also available manually.

To synchronize model codes immediately:

- Step 1 On the Console > Management > Settings page, click Sync Model Codes information now.
- Step 2 A short time later the page is updated to display the synchronization status at the top.

Configuring Management Alert Settings

The Alert Settings page specifies which email addresses receive email alerts and notifications during specific times.

To configure the alert notification settings, complete the following steps:

Step 1 Click the Console tab, expand the Management tree and click Alert Settings. The Alert Settings page displays.

 User Settings Log 	E-Mail Alert Recipient Schedule
Management Settings	Note: You can enter multiple email addresses separated by semicolon (";") Weekday:
Alert Settings	Schedule 1: prasad@sonicwall.com 00 🗸 to 08 🗸 hours
Sessions	Schedule 2: prasad@sonicwall.com 08 💌 to 16 🔍 hours
 Reports Diagnostics 	Schedule 3: prasad@sonicwall.com
• Events	
▶ Help	Saturday prasad@sonicwall.com
	Sunday prasad@sonicwall.com
	E-Mail Alert Format Preference
	 HTML Contains text, colors, images and links. Only compatible with HTML capable email software. Plain Text Contains all the details in plain text. Compatible with all email software. Plain Text (Simple)
	Contains a short message in plain text. Ideal for Pagers, SMS (Short Message Service) and similar applications.

- Step 2 Configure the email address(es) that will receive notifications and the times they are to receive them:
 - Schedule 1—Specifies who receives notifications during the first weekday schedule. Enter one or more email addresses (separated by commas) and specify the start and end time for the shift.
 - Schedule 2—Specifies who receives notifications during the second weekday schedule. Enter one or more email addresses (separated by commas) and specify the start and end time for the shift.
 - Schedule 3—Specifies who receives notifications during the third weekday schedule. Enter one or more email addresses (separated by commas) and specify the start and end time for the shift.
 - Saturday—Specifies who receives notifications on Saturday. Enter one or more email addresses (separated by commas) and specify the start and end time for the shift.
 - Sunday—Specifies who receives notifications on Sunday. Enter one or more email addresses (separated by commas) and specify the start and end time for the shift.
- Step 3 Select whether the email alert are to be sent as HTML, Plain Text, or Plain Text (Pager). The Pager setting sends a very short email to ensure that the email is not cut off by the character limits of some pagers.
- Step 4 When you are finished, click **Update**. The settings are saved.

Configuring Management Sessions

The Sessions page of the Management section of the Console allows you to view session statistics for currently logged in users and to end selected sessions.

Managing Sessions

On occasion, it might be necessary to log off other user sessions. To do this, complete the following steps:

Step 1 Click the Console tab, expand the Management tree and click Sessions. The Sessions page displays.



Step 2 When more than one session is active, a check box is displayed next to each row. Select the check box of each user to log off and click End selected sessions. The selected users are logged off.

Chapter 11 Managing Reports in the Console Panel

This section describes how to configure reporting settings on the Console panel. These include how often the summary information is updated, the number of days that summary information is stored, and the number of days that raw data is stored.

The following sections are included in this chapter:

- Summarizer on page 153
- Syslog Exclusion Filter on page 159
- Email/Archive on page 160

Summarizer

This section contains the following subsections:

- About Summary Data in Reports on page 153
- Summarizer Settings and Summarization Interval for CDP on page 154
- Configuring the Data Deletion Schedule Settings on page 156
- Configuring Data Storage on page 157
- Configuring Hostname Resolution on page 158

About Summary Data in Reports

These reports are constructed from the most current available summary data. In order to create summary data, the Analyzer Reporting Module must parse the raw data files.

When configuring Analyzer Reporting using the screens on the Console panel under Reports, you can select the amount of summary information to store. These settings affect the database size, be sure there is adequate disk space to accommodate the settings you choose.

Additionally, you can select the number of days that raw syslog data is stored. The raw data is made up of information for every connection. Depending on the amount of traffic, this can quickly consume an enormous amount of space in the database. Analyzer creates a new 2GB database for raw syslog data everyday. Be very careful when selecting how much raw information to store.

Summarizer Settings and Summarization Interval for CDP

SonicWALL CDP appliances send their syslog packets to Dell SonicWALL Analyzer through UDP packets. When summarization is enabled, the Summarizer processes those files and stores the data in the summary databases at the interval you specify.

See the following sections:

- Enabling Report Summarization for CDP Appliances on page 154
- Setting the Reports Data Summarization Interval on page 154
- Using Summarize Now on page 155

Enabling Report Summarization for CDP Appliances

To globally enable the summarization of report data that is necessary for viewing reports, complete the following:

- Step 1 On the Console panel, navigate to Reports > Summarizer.
- Step 2 Under Summarizer Settings, select Enable Report Summarization.
- Step 3 Click Update.

Setting the Reports Data Summarization Interval

The Summarizer processes syslog data sent from SonicWALL CDP appliances and stores the processed data in the summary databases at the interval you specify. When a CDP appliance is configured to communicate with Analyzer, you need to verify that the summarizer is scheduled to collect and process data for this unit at an appropriate interval.

To configure the summarization interval, complete the following steps:

Step 1 Click the **Console** tab, expand the **Reports** tree and click **Summarizer**. The CDP Summarizer page displays.

Summarizer Name	TP Address	Last Scheduled Run Time	Next Scheduled Run within the Hour of	Last Summarize Now Run Time
Summarizer at 10.0.89.250	10.0.89.250	08/12/2009 09:31:00	08/24/2011 15:06:56	
Summarizer at 10,208,114,181	10.208.114.181	12/12/2011 16:16:00	12/12/2011 16:31:00	05/16/2011 21:14:57
Summarizer at 10.203.23.67	10.203.23.67	12/12/2011 16:11:46	12/12/2011 16:26:46	• •
Summarizer at 10.203.23.22	10.203.23.22	11/09/2011 13:12:16	11/09/2011 13:27:16	
Summarizer at 10.203.23.76	10.203.23.76	11/09/2011 20:36:00	11/09/2011 20:51:00	
Summarizer at 10.195.11.91	10.195.11.91	11/11/2011 22:15:35	11/11/2011 22:30:35	
Summarizer at 10.203.23.75	10.203.23.75	12/02/2011 16:00:38	12/02/2011 16:15:38	
	Summarize Next Scheduled Ri (mm/dd/yyyy h		• : 00 •	Update

- **Step 2** Under Reports Data Summarization Interval, important information about the Summarizer is displayed. Use the **Summarize every** pull-down lists to specify how often in hours and minutes the Analyzer Reporting Module should process syslog data and update summary information.
- Step 3 Click Update to the right of this field.
- Step 4 To specify the next summarization time, enter a date in the form mm/dd/yyyy in the Next Scheduled Run Time field, and select the hour and minute values from the pull-down lists.
- Step 5 Click **Update** to the right of this field.

To update the summary information now, click **Summarize Now**. Dell SonicWALL Analyzer automatically processes the latest information and makes it available for immediate viewing.

For more information about using and verifying the Summarize Now option, see Using Summarize Now on page 155.

Note This does not affect the normally scheduled summarization updates on Analyzer.

Using Summarize Now

The Summarize Now feature allows the administrator to create instant summary reports without affecting the regularly scheduled summary reports. You can use Summarize Now to test that the Summarizer is gathering data for a managed unit. The SonicWALL Analyzer Summarize Now feature is located in the **Console** tab under **Reports > Summarizer**. The SonicWALL Analyzer Summarizer creates summary reports by default every eight hours. Summary reports can be configured by the administrator to occur every 15 minutes to every 24 hours.

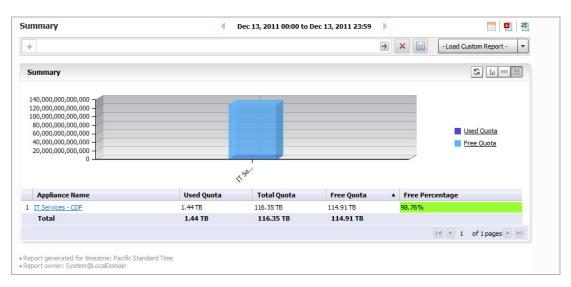
To use the Summarize Now feature, complete the following tasks:

- Step 1 Click the Console tab, expand the Reports tree and click Summarizer. Click Summarize Now to summarize data immediately.
- Step 2 You should see a pop-up window verifying that you want to summarize the data now. Summarizing data using Summarize Now is a one-time action and does not affect the scheduled summary. Click OK to continue.
- Step 3 To verify summarization, navigate to Log > View Log in the left pane. Search for the message **Report Data Summarized** to verify that the Summarize Now action has completed.
- **Step 4** When Summarize Now has completed, click the **Firewall** tab at the top of the screen. In the left pane, click **GlobalView** or click an appliance.



Note You might see incomplete data if you view the **Summary** section of a selected report before the **Summarize Now** process is complete. Wait for the **Report Data Summarized** message to be displayed in **Log** > **View Log**.

Step 5 In the center pane, click a report to expand it, then click **Summary** underneath it. For example, click **Capacity**, then click **Summary** to review the summarized CDP capacity usage data.



Step 6 Navigate to the Summary section of other reports in the center pane to see other summarized data.

Configuring the Data Deletion Schedule Settings

Syslog files sent from SonicWALL appliances are stored on the system, and are consolidated into the syslog database. The Summarizer processes the syslog data and stores the processed data in the summary database. After the configured period of syslog storage, the syslog data can be periodically deleted from the system. This is necessary, as the syslog files and database can consume a lot of space on the file system.

This section of the Summarizer page also provides a way to delete summarized data for a certain date. For example, if summarized data is kept for a long time, such as 90 days, then you could use this option to remove some summarized data from a particular date within the 90 day period if the stored data was becoming too large.

ý.

τίρ Run your database maintenance jobs soon after the completion of the scheduled tasks configured on this page for summarizing data and deleting old syslog data.

Analyzer requires large amounts of disk space for raw data storage. In previous versions, the maximum raw syslog database size was 2GB. Analyzer now provides enhanced database capacity by creating a new 2GB database everyday. Each file name includes the date it was created for easy reference. Raw syslog data is used to create Custom Reports for Firewall, SRA, and CDP appliances.

To configure the syslog and summarized data deletion settings, complete the following:

Step 1 On the **Console** panel, navigate to **Reports > Summarizer**.

Data Deletion Schedule						
	Delete Data Every:	Saturday	💌 at	19 💌 :	00 💌	Update

- Step 2 Under Data Deletion Schedule, select the day and time for deletion in the hour and minute widget. Syslog data is deleted at this time only after being stored for the number of days configured. You specify how long to keep the date in Data Storage Configuration. This field allows you to specify the data address of the Summarizer, how long to keep reporting data (in months), and how long to keep the raw syslog data (in months).
- Step 3 Click Update to the right of this field.

Configuring Data Storage

Sets the amount of time that reporting data and raw syslog data is stored.

Step 1 Click Summarizer at: drop-down menu, then select the desired summarizer IP address.

oata Storage Configuration		
Summarizer at:	10.5.40.51 💌	
Keep Reporting Data for:	01 💌 months	
Keep Raw Syslog Data Files for:	01 months	
		Update

- Step 2 Click Keep Reporting Data drop-down menu, then select the number of months to archive the data. Reporting data can be archived for a minimum of one month and a maximum of 36 months.
- Step 3 Click Keep Raw Syslog Data Files drop-down menu, then select the number of months to archive the data files. To disable the archiving of raw syslog data files, set the value to zero. The maximum amount of time to store raw syslog data files is 36 months.



Tip If you would like to store data for longer than 36 months, you can create scheduled scripting to move data that has been processed and stored in "//syslog/ArchivedSyslog/*.zip …" to a mapped network share for long-term storage.

Configuring Hostname Resolution

Hostname Resolution in the **Reports > Summarizer** page is configured for source IP addresses with missing hostnames while inserting the data in the database. This means that the reports show both the initiator IP address and the initiator hostname in the reports whenever applicable.

Private IP Hostname Resolution Configuration	
Enabled Reverse Hostname Resolution:	
Lookup thread count:	10 💌 🚍
Scan every:	2 💌 Minutes 🗩
Refresh Resolved Hostname Cache every:	60 🚽 Minutes 💭
	Update
Public IP Hostname Resolution Configuration	
Enable Public IP Host-name Resolution :	
Time out value for Resolution :	100 🐷 milisecond
	Update

 Enabled Reverse Hostname Resolution — Reverse hostname resolution is disabled by default. Enable this option for Analyzer to lookup for missing hostnames.

Note Enabling hostname lookup increases the time taken to process syslogs. All syslogs that need resolution are processed separately in parallel to normal syslog processing. This might slow down the summarizer, increase the memory, and consume more CPU cycle. Also, the memory and CPU are impacted further by changing the default configurations of the Lookup thread count, Scan every, Refresh Resolved Hostname Cache every.

Any changes to the Hostname Resolution Configuration take effect during the next summarizer run.

 Lookup thread count — Signifies how many threads are processing the lookup in parallel. The larger the number, the faster the processing.

Note Increasing this number also increases the load on the summarizer instance.

- Scan Every Analyzer dumps syslogs with missing hostnames to a particular folder. This
 time indicates how long it waits to scan the folder for new files.
- Refresh Resolved Hostname Cache every The hostname that is looked up for an IP address is cached. This time indicates how long the hostname is kept in the cache, after that it again looks up the hostname for that IP address.
- Update Click this button when you are finished configuring the settings.
- Enable Public IP Host-name Resolution Public IP hostname resolution is disabled by default, enable this option for Analyzer to lookup for missing public IP hostnames.
- **Time out value for resolution** Select the timeout period (in milliseconds) if the hostname is not resolved.

NMM Configuration

When the NMM option is enabled, the GMS creates NMM files that are sent with the syslog messages.

NMM Configuration		
	Enable NMM:	
		Update
		18 19

Syslog Exclusion Filter

The Syslog Exclusion Filter allows you to select what fields and operators to use for filtering the syslog database. It is picked up by the Summarizer every 15 minutes and applied to the global syslog settings.

The Syslog Exclusion Filters function in a manner similar to applying an exclusion filter to a single Firewall or SRA appliance, but are applied to all GMS appliances, or all appliances in a Firewall or SRA group.

1. To add a filter, click **Reports** > **Syslog Filter**.

	Syslog Field Name	Operator	Syslog Filter Value	Level	Configure
		Operator		22.222	Configure
	m	=	98	Appliance	
	m	=	597	Appliance	
	m	=	1197	Appliance	
	proto	=	udp/netbios-ns	Appliance	
	proto	=	udp/dns	Appliance	
	m	=	700	Appliance	
	m	=	602	Appliance	
	m		37	Appliance	
	m	=	805	Appliance	
	pri	=	7	Appliance	0 🖯
s	Id Filter Delete Filter(s) Syslog Exclusion Filter applies only to th yslogs continue to be stored in the file usion Filter Settings will be picked up by dd/modify a Syslog Exclusion Filter at ur	system without any f the Summarizer ever	iltering. y: 00 hour(s):15 min(s).	ports > Filter Settings.	

2. Click Add a Filter. The Add Filter menu comes up.

Syslog Field Name:	pri
Operator:	
Syslog Filter Value:	7
evel:	Appliance 👻
Appliance Type:	Firewall 👻

3. Select the syslog field name, and an operator and value, for the field you wish to exclude. Then select the level of Deployment: Appliance, Agent, or full Deployment.

If you select Appliance, you are prompted for the type of appliance: Firewall, SRA, or CDP. If you select Agent, you are prompted to select from a list of SGMS agents.

4. Click Update.

You can also click on the pencil in the Configure column to edit an existing filter setting. If no values appear in the Configure column, the filter is a default system filter. These defaults cannot be configured or deleted.

Syslogs are stored in the database without filtering, so the filters in the Syslog Exclusion Filter apply only to values displayed in Reports.

Email/Archive

The **Console** > **Reports** > **Email/Archive** page provides global options for setting the time and interval for emailing/archiving scheduled reports, and global settings for the Web server, logo, and PDF sorting options.

ail/Archive Time Settings		
Next Scheduled Email/Archive Time (mm/dd/yyyy hh:min)	12/13/2011 02 🗸 : 05 🗸	Update
Send Weekly Reports Every	Monday 🗸	Update
Send Monthly Reports Every	7 👻 of the Month	Update
te: Weekly reports are generated for Mo	nday-Sunday of the week, and Monthly	Reports are
te: Weekly reports are generated for Mo nerated for the 1-30/31 of the month.	nday-Sunday of the week, and Monthly	Reports are
te: Weekly reports are generated for Mo nerated for the 1-30/31 of the month. bgo Settings Logo currently in use:		Reports are
te: Weekly reports are generated for Mo nerated for the 1-30/31 of the month. Ingo Settings		Reports are
te: Weekly reports are generated for Mo nerated for the 1-30/31 of the month. Digo Settings Logo currently in use:	cover_logo.gif	

Configuring Email/Archive Settings

To configure Email/Archive and Web server settings, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Click the **Console** tab, expand the **Reports** tree and click **Email/Archive**. The Email/Archive page displays.
- Step 2 To set the next archive time, enter the date and time in the Next Scheduled Email/Archive Time fields and click Update.
- Step 3 To specify the day to send weekly reports, select the day from the Send Weekly Reports Every list box and click Update.

- Step 4 To specify the date to send monthly reports, select the date from the Send Monthly Reports Every list box and click Update.
- Step 5 If the Web server address, port, or protocol has changed since SonicWALL Analyzer was installed, the new values automatically appear in the Email/Archive Configuration section. These settings can be modified on the System Interface, and cannot be modified here.
- **Step 6** Under Logo Settings, you can select a logo to be used on reports. By default, the SonicWALL logo is used. To select another logo, click **Browse** next to the **Logo File** field or type the path and filename into the field, and then click **Update**.
- Step 7 Under Storage Configuration, select how many days to store Universal Scheduled Reports (USR) then click **Update**.

USR schedules are managed under the Dashboard Tab. For more information on USR scheduling, refer to Using the Universal Scheduled Reports Application on page 34.

Note High-traffic systems can generate reports that consume large amounts of memory, disk space and CPU time. Set your **Number of Days to Archive** and **Scheduled Archive Time** accordingly.

Managing Legacy Reports

Reports generated by pre-7.2 releases of Dell SonicWALL Analyzer are still available for viewing, but require careful management. Dell SonicWALL Analyzer 7.2 Reporting is not compatible with earlier versions, but reports generated by earlier versions are still accessible under the current reporting structure.

Because it is not possible to view both 7.2 and pre-7.2 reports in the same session, we advise creating a separate Log in for accessing Legacy reports. This allows switching back and forth, as you can only view 7.2 or pre 7.2 reports in a session. By creating a separate login, you can switch between viewing modes.

- **Step 1** Create a new User or Administrator login. An Administrator login (with a name like Admin_Legacy) is recommended, as this login has full privileges. For more information on configuring Legacy reports for new user, refer to the Console Management section.
- Step 2 Log in to the Management > Users > Action Permissions tab.
- Step 3 Set flag in the check box for Show Legacy (pre GMS 7.2) Reports.

Note This check box is only available if SonicWALL Analyzer 7.0 Reports exist in the system.

all Users	General Screen Permissions Unit Permissions Action Permissions	
 Administrators End Users Guest Users Operators 	Units Units Add Unit Modify Unit Delete Unit Rename Unit Re-assign Agents	
	Views Manage View Change View	
	Dashboard ✓Show Universal Dashboard ✓Show Universal Scheduled Reports	
	Others Enable CLI Show 'Switch' link Use Web Services	
Enable Legacy Report Checkbox	Show Legacy (pre GMS 7.0) Reports	
	✓Update	7 Reset

Step 4 Log out, log back in using the new Login created in Step 1.

If Legacy Reports are no longer needed, you can delete them.

- Step 1 Go to Reports > Summarizer.
- Step 2 Under the Data Deletion Schedule, see a box for Delete 7.0 Reporting Data Immediately. Click Delete to delete the Legacy reports.

Delete Data Every:	Saturday 🗸 at 19 🖌 : 00 🗸	Update
	Delete GMS 6.0 Reporting Data Immediately:	Delete



Note If you delete pre-7.2 reporting data, the Legacy data check boxes under the Action Permissions and Summarizer tabs are longer available, going forward.

Chapter 12 Using Diagnostics

This chapter describes the diagnostic information that SonicWALL Analyzer provides and summarizer status information.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- Configuring Debug Log Settings on page 166
- Summarizer Status on page 167

Configuring Debug Log Settings

Setting debug levels allows for faster troubleshooting of potential application issues. This action creates debug log files on all the systems in this deployment and could hamper application performance and also fill up disk space. You should reset to "No Debug" for normal operation as soon as the potential issue has been resolved.

Note The debug level should only be set based on guidance from Dell SonicWALL Technical Support.

The higher the debug level, the more the system resources that is used up to generate debug data and in turn lower the overall system performance.

When instructed by SonicWALL Technical Support, complete the following steps to set the debug level:

Step 1 Click Console, expand the Diagnostics tree and click Debug Log Settings. The Debug Log Settings page displays.

on all the systems in th	is deployment and could hamp	ng of potential application issues. This action creates debug log file per application performance and also fill up disk space. You should the potential issue has been resolved.
- The higher the deb		dance from Dell SonicWALL Technical Support n resources that will be used up to generate debug data and in tur
28		-
28	No Debug	-
System Debug Level:	No Debug No Debug Level 1 (Codepath)	-

Step 2 Click the System Debug Level drop-down, then select one of the following:

- Level 1 (Codepath)
- Level 2 (Simple)
- Level 3 (Logic)
- Level 4 (Detailed)
- Level 5 (Highly Detailed)
- Step 3 Click Update.

Summarizer Status

The **Summarizer Status** page displays overall summarizer utilization information for the deployment including database and syslog file statistics, and details on the current status of the summarizer.

Summarizer Status	•						
Summarizer Utilizati	on						
18 %							
10.0.89.251							
Summarizer	Estimated Capacity (millio syslog/day)	n Average Load (million syslog/day)	Reporting Database Size	Raw Data Directory Size	Estimated Cache Size	Backup Directory Size	Statu
10.0.89.251	143.25	24.41	25.7 GB of 2,053.61 GB	39.45 GB of 2,053.61 GB	20 GB of 2,053.61 GB	82.67 GB	ОК
Deployment Stat	tus						
OK							
, in the second s	arizer At 10.0.89.251	e specific to the deployment and	could vary across sys	tems.			
Summarizer Utiliz							
Average Summarize			18%				
Peak Summarizer U			23%				
	(million syslog/day):		143.25				
Average Load (milli			24.41				
Average Run Time I			4h:5m:24s				
Average Syslog Sun	nmarized (million/day):		24.41				
Average Syslog Sur	nmarized Per Minute:		99,476				
Data File Informa	ation						
Data File Type	File Stats	Oldest					
Reporting Database	26,313.63 MB						
Backup Files	84,656.19 MB						
Unprocessed Files	0 Files - 0 MB						
Archived Files		Ved Feb 01 00:24:15 PST 2012					
Bad Files	1863 Files - 4,581.35 MB	Ved Feb 08 12:50:57 PST 2012					
Bdu Files							
	ess Details						
Summarizer Proc	ess Details						

The Summarizer Status screen provides performance metrics for your network administrator to plan, design, and expand your Analyzer server deployment. This feature has information on the Syslog Collector and Summarizer metrics. The metrics displayed are daily averages collected over the last seven days.

You can receive alert emails when Summarizer Status shows any abnormalities.

To reach the Summarizer Status screen, navigate to the **Console** panel of Analyzer and then to **Diagnostics > Summarizer Status**.

The Summarizer Status page is divided into a section showing the overall deployment-wide summarizer status and sections with details for each summarizer. See the following sections:

- Summarizer Status Over 7 Days on page 168
- Details for Summarizer at <IP Address> on page 169
- Syslogs sent by appliances that are not under Reporting and Management on page 171

Summarizer Status Over 7 Days

The Summarizer Status Over 7 Days section displays overall summarizer utilization information for the deployment including database and syslog file statistics. Results are calculated over the last seven days.

Summarizer Status 0	iver 7 days						
Summarizer Utilizatio	on						
10.0.89.251							
Summarizer	Estimated Capacity (million syslog/day)	Average Load (million syslog/day)	Reporting Database Size	Raw Data Directory Size	Estimated Cache Size	Backup Directory Size	Status
10.0.89.251	143.16	24.41	25.7 GB of 2,053.61 GB	39.56 GB of 2,053.61 GB	20 GB of 2,053.61 GB	82.67 GB	ок
Deployment State	us						
ОК							
	5 web site for more information o load and estimated capacity are s			ems.			

Summarizer Utilization

The top Summarizer Utilization section shows the average utilization of the summarizer over the applicable time period. The Dial Charts show the percent of total capacity used by the Summarizer. The following metrics are also displayed in the Summarizer Utilization section:

- Summarizer: Displays the IP address of the Summarizer.
- Estimated Capacity (million syslog/day): The estimated capacity of the system. This is calculated by taking the (average load per day) and dividing it by the (time spent), assuming that the Summarizer was to constantly summarize 24 hours (as in the case of a dedicated Summarizer).
- Average Load (million syslog/day): The number of incoming syslogs per day.
- **Reporting Database Size**: Displays the size of the reporting database in gigabytes.
- Raw Data Directory Size: Displays the size of the raw syslog directory in gigabytes.
- Estimated Cache Size: Displays the estimated size of the cache in gigabytes.
- Backup Directory Size: Displays the size of the backup directory in gigabytes.
- Status: Displays the status of the Summarizer. There are three different status notifications:
 - **OK**: The system is operating normally.
 - High Capacity: The average load is greater than 90 percent of capacity.
 - Low Disk Space: There is less that 5GB of space left on the disk.

Deployment Status

The Deployment Status tells the user how the deployment should be sized if it is not performing well. The user might need to reassign some units to a different agent, add another agent, or add more disk space

Details for Summarizer at <IP Address>

This sections details the Summarizer Utilization for the applicable IP address.

Summarizer Utilization

The Summarizer Utilization section for a specific summarizer shows not only the information at deployment level, but also provides granular details of the summarizer's operation and current status for each individual summarizer.

Summarizer Utilization	
Average Summarizer Utilization:	18%
Peak Summarizer Utilization:	19%
Estimated Capacity (million syslog/day):	143.09
Average Load (million syslog/day):	24.41
Average Run Time Per Day:	4h:5m:36s
Average Syslog Summarized (million/day):	24.41
Average Syslog Summarized Per Minute:	99,369

- Average Summarizer Utilization: The average percentage of Summarizer utilization.
- Peak Summarizer Utilization: The percentage of peak Summarizer utilization.
- Estimated Capacity (million syslog/day): The estimated capacity of the system. This is calculated by taking the (average load per day) and dividing it by the (time spent), assuming that the Summarizer was to constantly summarize 24 hours (as in the case of a dedicated Summarizer).
- Average Load (million syslog/day): The number of incoming syslogs per day.
- Average Run Time Per Day: The total amount of time spent generating summarization statistical data and results over the time period of one day.
- Average Syslog Summarized (million/day): The total number of syslogs summarized, displayed in millions per day.
- Average Syslog Summarized per minute: The average number of syslogs summarized per minute over the applicable time period.



Note Not all syslogs are summarized. Some syslogs are discarded based on criteria defined at the Console > Reports > Syslog Filter and Unit > Reports > Configuration > Syslog Filter pages.

Data File Information

This section displays syslog file details for the selected summarizer.

7 Data File Informa	tion	
Data File Type	File Stats	Oldest
Reporting Database	26,326.56 MB	
Backup Files	84,656.19 MB	
Unprocessed Files	1 Files - 2.41 MB	Thu Jun 21 15:22:52 PDT 2012
Archived Files	3105 Files - 36,241 MB	Wed Feb 01 00:24:15 PST 2012
Bad Files	1863 Files - 4,581.35 MB	Wed Feb 08 12:50:57 PST 2012

The Data File Information table is divided into three columns:

- **Data File Type**: The type of files being reported on. There are five main data file types:
 - Reporting Database Files: The files in the reporting database.
 - Backup Files: The backup snapshot.
 - Unprocessed Files: The data files in the summarizer's processing queue.

- Archived Files: The processed data files.
- Bad Files: Data files with processing errors.
- File Stats: The number of syslog files in the category and their size in Megabytes.
- Oldest: The date and time on the oldest file in the category.

Summarizer Process Details

The Summarizer Process Details section shows what tasks the summarizer is performing at the moment the **Console > Diagnostics > Summarizer Status** page displays. Refresh your browser display or leave the page and return to it to update the information.

If the summarizer is currently running, the page displays the thread, appliance identifier, file being used, and state of the summarizer.

Summa	arizer Process Details		
Number o	of threads currently running: 1		
			-
Thread	File	State	Started at

If the summarizer is currently idle, the page displays the last run time and next run time.

Summarizer Process Details		
Summarizer is idl		
Sammanzer is iai		
Last Run Time:	01/26/2012 15:06:23	
Next Run Time:	01/26/2012 15:21:23	
Summarizer is idl Last Run Time: Next Run Time:		

Syslogs sent by appliances that are not under Reporting and Management

Appliances that are no longer managed by Analyzer might still send syslog messages, impacting the performance of the summarizer. The syslogs from such appliances are dropped and not stored in archivedSyslogs or badSyslogs folders.

This feature displays a list (refreshed every 12 hours) of the appliances that are still sending syslogs messages even though they are no longer managed Analyzer, as well as appliances that are incorrectly configured:

* 5	yslogs sent by appliances that are not under Reporting and Management
• s	erial # of appliances for Summarizer 127.0.0.1
1	23412341234
_	34234234234
T 5	erial # of appliances for Summarizer 12.12.12.1
N	pne
- S	erial # of appliances that are misconfigured
1	23412312312
Note:	
	n to the appliance and disable the syslogs
-	
	ou dont have access to the appliance use the rules to the gateway to block the serials
	ix the misconfigured serials, login to the appliance and change the GMS Settings
* The	serials listed here refresh every 12 hours

If your Analyzer has a list of appliances in these fields, try the following to correct the issue:

- Log in to the appliance and disable the syslogs.
- If you do not have access to the appliance, use the rules to the gateway to block the serial numbers.
- To fix the misconfigured appliances, log in to the appliance and change the Analyzer settings.

Chapter 13 Granular Event Management

This chapter describes how to configure and use the Granular Event Management (GEM) feature in a Analyzer environment.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Granular Event Management Overview on page 173
- Using Granular Event Management on page 174
- Configuring Granular Event Management on page 176
- Viewing Current Alerts on page 184

Granular Event Management Overview

Granular Event Management (GEM) provides a customized and controlled manner in which events are managed and alerts are customized and enabled. On the Console panel, GEM allows you to systematically configure each sub-component of your alert in order for the alert to best accommodate your needs.

The GEM alert has multiple sub-components, some of which have further subcomponents. It is not necessary to configure all sub-components prior to creating an alert.

• **Thresholds**: A threshold defines the condition that must be matched to trigger an event and send an alert. Each threshold is associated with a Severity to tag the generated alert as critical, warning, or information.

One or more threshold elements are defined within a threshold. Each threshold includes the following elements: an Operator, a Value, and a Severity. When a value is received for an alert type, the GEM framework examines threshold elements to find a match for the specified condition. If a match is found (one or more conditions match), the threshold with the highest severity containing a matching element is used to trigger an event.

- Schedules: You can use Schedules to specify the day(s) and time (intervals) in which to generate an alert. You can also invert a schedule that means that the schedule is the opposite of the time specified in it. For example:
 - Generate an alert during weekdays only, or weekends only, or only during business hours.
 - Do not generate an alert during a time period when the unit, network, or database are down for maintenance.

What is Granular Event Management?

The purpose of Granular Event Management is to provide all the event handling and alerting functionality for Analyzer. The Analyzer management interface provides screens for centralized event management on the Console panel, including screens for **Events > Threshold**, Schedule, and Alert Settings. The panel also provides an **Events > Alert Settings** screen where you can enable or disable alerts.

You can enable or disable an alert at the global or unit level in Analyzer. At the global level, the alert is then applied to all units. Whenever you add a new unit to Analyzer, the alerts set at the global level are applied to the new unit.

How Does Granular Event Management Work?

The Granular Event Management framework provides customized event handling for specific alerts about database and database log size, and security service subscription licenses. For a list of the predefined alerts, see Using Granular Event Management on page 174.

Using Granular Event Management

For convenience and usability, a number of default settings are predefined for severities, schedules, thresholds, and alerts. You can edit the predefined values to customize the settings for thresholds and schedules. The predefined defaults for the Console panel are as follows:

Panel	Screens	Predefined Default Objects
Console	Events > Schedule	Schedule Groups:
		• 24x7
		Weekdays 24 hours
		• 8x5
		• Weekend
		Schedules:
		Schedule: admin
		Database Backup
		Monday 24 hours
		Monday business hours
		Tuesday 24 hours
		Tuesday business hours
		Wednesday 24 hours
		Wednesday business hours
		Thursday 24 hours

Table 5 GEM Predefined Default Objects

Panel	Screens	Predefined Default Objects
		Thursday business hours
Console	Events > Alert Settings	Database Info
		Database Size Status
		System Files Backed-Up Status
		Disk Space Utilization Status

About Alerts

The **Events > Alert Settings** screens are available in the Console and Firewall panels. You can enable or disable alerts on these screens.

The GEM framework provides different types of alert types for the respective areas of the Analyzer application:

- Firewall panel: Alert settings for Reporting
- Console panel: Alert settings for the Analyzer application

Table 6	GEM Alert Ty	oes
---------	--------------	-----

Panel location	Available Alert Types
Console	Backed up Syslog Files
	New Firmware Availability
	Bandwidth Usage (Billing Cycle)
	Bandwidth Usage (Daily)
Firewall	Anti Virus License
	CFS License
	Warranty License
	Anti Spyware License
	Intrusion License
	VPN Tunnel Status
	Agent Quota Reached
	Agent Unsuccessful Backups
	Appliance Capacity Status
	CPU Status

Configuring Granular Event Management

To set up the GEM environment after installing Analyzer, start with the Events screens on the Console panel. You should examine the Threshold and Schedule screens and make any necessary configuration changes. Then you can enable alerts in the Events screens on the Console panel and Firewall panel.

See the following section:

Configuring Events on the Console Panel on page 176

Configuring Events on the Console Panel

In the Events screens on the Console panel, you can configure the frequency of subscription expiration and task failure notifications, as well as severities, thresholds, schedules, and alerts for handling events.

See the following sections:

- Configuring Event Thresholds on page 176
- Configuring Event Schedules on page 178
- Enabling or Disabling Alerts on the Console Panel on page 181

Configuring Event Thresholds

In the **Events > Threshold** screen, you can view existing event thresholds and configure their elements, and add custom thresholds. A threshold defines the condition for which an event is triggered. Predefined thresholds have names similar to predefined Alert Types. Each threshold can contain one or more threshold elements. An element consists of an Operator, a Value, and a Severity.

The following tasks are described in this section:

- Editing an Threshold Element on page 176
- Enabling/Disabling Thresholds and Threshold Elements on page 177

Editing an Threshold Element

To edit an existing element of a Threshold, complete the following steps:

Step 1 On the Events > Threshold screen, click Section 2010 Edit located in the Configure column in the element row.

The Edit Threshold pop-up window displays:

Operator:	is greater than or equal to 🔛			
/alue:	25000			
Description:	Exceeds 250	00 MB		
Severity:	Critical	Critical		
)isable:				

Step 2 In the **Operator** field, select from the drop-down menu the type of operator to apply to your threshold element.

Edit Thresh	nold Element for Database Size Status	
Operator:	is greater than or equal to 🔯	
Value:	is equal to	
Description:	is less than is less than or equal to	
Severity:	is greater than 🔽	
Disable:	is equal to (match case) is equal to (ignore case) is not equal to contains does not contain	
	is is not	

- Step 3 In the Value field, enter the value for your threshold element.
- Step 4 In the Description field, enter the description for your threshold element.
- Step 5 In the Severity field, select the severity priority from the drop-down menu. These are color coded for your easy reference on the Events > Threshold screen.

Operator:	is greater than or equal to			
Value:	25000			
Description:	Exceeds 25000 MB			
Severity:	Critical	Critical		
Disable:		Information Warning Critical		

- Step 6 To disable the threshold element, click **Disable**. See Enabling/Disabling Thresholds and Threshold Elements on page 177.
- Step 7 Click Update.

Enabling/Disabling Thresholds and Threshold Elements

The GEM feature provides **Disable** that allows you to disable or enable thresholds or individual elements within that threshold. If it is needed again, you can simply enable it.

You can disable a threshold by disabling all its elements. You can also disable individual elements within a threshold.

To enable or disable Thresholds and/or their elements, complete the following tasks:

- Step 1 On the Console panel, navigate to the Events > Threshold screen. On this screen, you are able to view existing Thresholds. You can also view existing elements within those thresholds by clicking Expand by a threshold. You have the following two options for the enabling/disabling feature:
 - You can enable or disable a Threshold by disabling/enabling all the elements that exist within it.
 - You can enable/disable the individual elements within a Threshold.
- Step 2 To enable or disable a threshold and/or elements, click Edit 💉 that is on the element level.

Step 3 Select Disable to disable the element or deselect Disable to enable the element.

Operator:	is greater than 🛛 🔛		
Value:	3		
Description:	Exceeds 3 missed heartbeats		
Severity:	Critical	Critical	
Disable:			
Severity: Disable:	Exceeds o m		

Step 4 Click Update.

Configuring Event Schedules

The next component on the Console panel is **Events > Schedule**. In this screen, you can add, delete, or configure schedules and schedule groups.

Schedule groups are one or more schedules grouped within an object. Administrators and Owners can edit these objects. Other users should be able to view or use them only if **Visible to Non-Administrators** is selected.

The following tasks are described in this section:

- Adding an Event Schedule on page 178
- Editing an Event Schedule on page 179
- Adding an Event Schedule Group on page 179
- Deleting a Schedule or Schedule Group on page 180

Adding an Event Schedule

In **Events > Schedules** you can add, delete, or configure schedules. See your schedules and schedule groups, their descriptions, and whether they are enabled. You can also individually delete one schedule or schedule group at a time by selecting the trash-icon on the right side for each row. For quick reference, you can hover your mouse over the descriptions to quickly view the type of schedule and the days and times when it is active.

To add an event schedule, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 On the Events > Schedules screen, click Add Schedule.
- Step 2 In the Name field, enter a name for the schedule.
- Step 3 In the Domain field, click the pull-down list and select a name. This function is for Super Admins only.
- **Step 4** In the **Description** field, add a description for the schedule.
- Step 5 Select Visible to Non-Administrators if you want the schedule to be visible and usable by non-administrators.
- **Step 6** To temporarily disable a schedule, select **Disable**.
- Step 7 Click Invert to create a schedule that is "off" during the dates and times that you specify.

- **Step 8** In the Schedule field, you can create one or more schedules. For each schedule, configure either:
 - One Time Occurrence
 - Fill in the **Date** and **Time** fields.
 - Recurrence
 - Fill in Days, Start Time, and End Time fields.
- Step 9 Click Add to add this schedule to the Schedule List text box.

Add Schedule			
Name:			
Domain:	LocalDomain		
Description:			
Visible to Non-Administrators:			
Disable:			
Invert:			
Schedule:			
One-time occurr	ence		
Date:	(mm/dd/yyyy)		
Time:	: (24 hr. format)		
Recourrence			
Day(s):	Mon Tue Wed Thu		
Start Time:	: (24 hr. format)		
End Time:	: (24 hr. format)		
	V Add		
Schedule List:		0	
		V	
	V <u>Delete</u> V <u>Delete All</u>		
Γ	Update Reset		

- Step 10 To delete an entry from the Schedule List text box, select the entry that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**. Click **Delete All** to delete all entries.
- Step 11 Click Update when you are finished.

Editing an Event Schedule

To edit an existing schedule, click the **Edit** icon on the right side of the **Events > Schedule** screen. The screen and procedure for editing are the same as those for adding a schedule. See Adding an Event Schedule on page 178.

Adding an Event Schedule Group

You can combine several schedules into a schedule group on the **Events > Schedule** screen. To add a schedule group, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 On the Events > Schedule screen, click Add Schedule Group.
- Step 2 Enter the name of your schedule group in the Name field.
- Step 3 Enter a description of your schedule group in the **Description** field.
- Step 4 Click Visible to Non-Administrators to allow this schedule group to be viewed and used by non administrators.

- Step 5 Click **Disable** to temporarily disable the schedule group.
- **Step 6** In the **Schedules** field, select the schedule(s) to add to your schedule group, and then use the arrow buttons to move the selected schedule into or out of the group. To move multiple schedule groups and/or schedules at the same time, hold **CTRL** on your keyboard while making your selections.

Add Schedule Group	
Name:	
Domain:	LocalDomain 🔛
Description:	
Visible to Non-Administrators:	
Disable:	
Schedules: Friday 24 hrs Friday business hrs Monday 24 hrs Monday business hrs	
Saturday 24 hrs Schedule: admin Schedule: AngelaM Schedule: test Schedule: test1 Schedule: test1	
->	> <- <<
	Update

Step 7 Click Update.

Editing an Event Schedule Group

To edit an existing schedule group, click the **Edit** icon on the right side of the **Events** > **Schedule** screen. The screen and procedure for editing are the same as those for adding a event schedule group. See Adding an Event Schedule Group on page 179.

Deleting a Schedule or Schedule Group

You can delete schedules or schedule groups, or you can remove schedules from schedule groups.

Note Deleting a Schedule or Schedule Group that is in use is not permitted. A warning message displays when this action is executed.

To delete an event schedule, schedule group, or remove a schedule from a schedule group:

- Step 1 Navigate to the Events > Schedule screen.
- **Step 2** Click the check boxes of the schedule groups or schedules that you want deleted. When you click **Schedule Group**, the schedules within that schedule group are deleted as well.
- Step 3 To remove a schedule from a schedule group, click **Expand** on the schedule group, and select the schedules you wish to remove within that group.
- Step 4 To delete the selected schedule group(s) or remove the selected schedules from a group, click Delete Schedule Group(s)/Remove Schedules from Group.
- Step 5 To delete the selected schedule(s), click Delete Schedule(s).

Enabling or Disabling Alerts on the Console Panel

The **Console > Events > Alert Settings** screen provides predefined alerts that apply to Analyzer as a whole. You can hover your mouse over these to display information about them or click the arrow to display more information about the alert. You can enable or disable these alerts by selecting or clearing the check box in the **Enable** column for the alert, then clicking the Enable/Disable Alert(s) link.

Alerts ▼ Name	Alert Type	Interval	Destination/Schedule	Enabled
				citableu
Database Info	Database Info	24 hrs.	1 entry found	~
 Backed-Up Syslog Files Status summarizer: backed-up 	Backed-Up Syslog Files	10 mins.	1 entry found Threshold: Backed-Up Syslog Files	
 Disk Space Utilization Status gmsvpinstance: Analyzer40.51 	Disk Space Utilization Status	5 mins.	1 entry found Threshold: Disk Space Used	 Image: A start of the start of

Add Alert

In the Add Alert panel you can enter an alert name and description, select the options for visible to non-administrators and disable, and enter the polling interval. complete the following steps to add an alert:

- Step 1 Navigate to the Events > Alert Settings page.
- Step 2 Click Add Alert.
- Step 3 Enter a name and description for your alert.
- Step 4 Enable Visible to Non-Administrators if you want your Alert to be visible to non-administrators.
- Step 5 Enable Disable to disable this Alert.
- Step 6 Enter a Polling Interval value (in seconds: 60-86400)

Alert Type

In the Alert Type panel you can select an alert type from the provided list and view the definitions of each alert type.

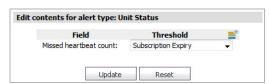
To configure an Alert Type, complete the following steps:

Step 1 Click the Alert Type pull-down list and select an alert type.

Most of the Alert Types require you to edit content. Editing Contents allows the user to pick additional information, in a granular fashion, on which the alerting has to be executed.

Note When an alert type is selected, a description for that alert is displayed in the Alert Type panel.

Step 2 Click Edit Content. The Edit Contents for Alert Type Unit Status pop-up window displays.



Step 3 Click the Threshold pull-down list and select a threshold.



Note You can create a new threshold on-the-fly by clicking the icon. Only one new threshold can be created in this feature.

Step 4 Click Update. To reset the settings, click Reset.

Destination / Schedule

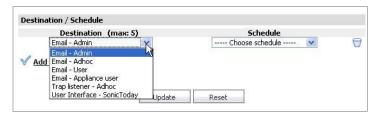
In the Destination / Schedule panel you can add up to five destinations and set a schedule for each.

To add a destination and set a schedule, complete the following steps:



Note Every selected destination is required to have a schedule set.

Step 1 Click the **Add Destination** link under the Destination/Schedule section. The Destination field designates where you want alerts to be sent. You have a maximum number of five destinations.



Step 2 Click the **Schedule** pull-down list, then select a schedule type. The Schedule field designates the frequency of when you want alerts to be sent to the destination(s).

Destination (max: 5)	Schedule
Email - Admin 🛛 😽	Choose schedule 😽
Add Destination	Choose schedule Schedule groups 24×7 Weekdays 24 hrs &x5 F Weekend Schedules Schedule: admin Database Backup Monday 24 hrs Tuesday 24 hrs Tuesday 24 hrs Weekneday
one	Thursday 24 hrs Thursday business hrs
	Friday 24 hrs Friday 24 hrs

Step 3 Click Update to finish adding an alert.

Enabling/Disabling Alerts

To enable and disable an alert, complete the following steps:

Enabling a Alert

- **Step 1** Select **Enabled** for the alert(s) you wish to enable.
- Step 2 Click Enable/Disable Alert(s). A confirmation window displays. Click OK to enable/disable.

The pa	ge at http://10.0.14.251:85 says: 🛛 🛛 🔀
8	You are about to enable/disable the following alerts: Unit Status - Disabled
	Do you want to continue?
	OK Cancel

Disabling an Alert

- Step 1 Deselect Enabled on the alert(s) you wish to disable.
- Step 2 Click Enable/Disable Alert(s). A confirmation window displays. Click OK to enable/disable.



Deleting Alerts

To delete an alert, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Select the check box(s) of the Alert(s) you wish to delete.
- Step 2 Click Delete Alert. A confirmation window displays.



- Step 3 Click OK to delete.

Note You can also delete an alert by clicking the **Delete** icon under the **Configure** section of the alert you wish the delete.

Editing Alerts

After an alert is created, you can go back and edit it at any time.

To edit an alert, complete the following steps:

Step 1 Click the **Configure** icon of the alert you wish to edit.

arch: Name	🗸 Equals 💉			Search	Clear
erts					
🔻 Name	Alert Type	Interval	Destination/Schedule	Enabled	Configure
] ▼ Unit Status Missed hear	Unit Status tbeat count	5 mins.	1 entry found Threshold: Unit	Status	6

The Edit Alert page displays.

Edit Alert: Unit Status			
Name:	Unit Status		
Description:	Monitor Up/Down St	atus for a Unit	
Visible to Non-Administrators:			
Disable:			
Polling Interval:	300 (in seconds:	60 - 86400)	
Alert Type			
Alert Type:	Unit Status 💌	V Edit Content [Edit	ed]
Description: Tracks a Units Up/Do number of missed heartbeats that			c. This value is the
Destination / Schedule			
Destination (ma	ix: 5)	Schedule	
Email - Admin	~	Schedule: admin	▼
✓ Add Destination	Update	Reset	

Step 2 Refer to the section Add Alert on page 181 and follow the configuration procedures to edit your existing Alert.

Viewing Current Alerts

You can view a list of current alerts on the **Events > Current Alerts** page of the panel. Select a global view or unit to view current alerts for your selection.

Alert Listin	g	
Severity	Unit Name	Description
Warning	Test 4060	The Intrusion subscription has not been activated for this device

Chapter 14 Using Analyzer Help

To access the Analyzer online help, click **Help** in the top-right corner of the Analyzer user interface.

The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer online help provides context-sensitive conceptual overviews, configuration examples, and trouble shooting tips.

About Analyzer

The **Console > Help > About** page displays the version of Analyzer being run, who the Analyzer is licensed to, database information, and the serial number of the Analyzer.

To access the Analyzer online help, click **Help** in the top-right corner of the Analyzer user interface.

Tips and Tutorials

Tips and tutorials are available in some pages of the user interface, and are denoted by a "Light bulb" icon:

User Settings	Video Tutorials
▶ Log	• 🕒 Introduction and Feature Overview of GMS 7.0 - 22 minutes
Management	Backup/Restore - 25 minutes
Reports	 Buckdprivestore 22 minutes Reverse Inheritance - 18 minutes
Diagnostics	• Image of the second s
Events	Granual Control: Switch Icon/Link - 12 minutes
▼ Help	GMS Web Services: Overview - 22 minutes
About	
Tips and Tutorials	KnowledgeBase Articles
	 KBID 4897: Email Security: How to use SNMP Net Monitoring with Email Security
	 KBID 3180: GMS: Troubleshooting Security Appliance Acquisition in GMS (PDF)
	 KBID 6388: UMA: Booting the UMA into Safe Mode
	 KBID 4266: <u>GMS: Transfer GMS to new Hardware on a Different Machine (PDF)</u>
	KBID 3153: <u>GMS: Best Practices for GMS Operations (PDF)</u>
	 KBID 4196: <u>GMS: Configuring Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)</u> KBID 6750: GMS: Optimizing GMS for best performance
	KBD 3563: GMS: Optimizing GMS for best performance KBD 3563: GMS: How to Create Custom Reports
	KBID 5450: GMS: How do ereate Custom Reports KBID 5450: GMS: How does GMS "Acquire" a Firewall?
<u>Nei</u> <u>up</u>	olution in Reports t the Summarizer caught GVC user info in ViewPoint
📢 😜 Internet	● • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •

To access tips and tutorials:

- Step 1 Navigate to the page where you need help.
- **Step 2** If available, click the Light bulb icon in the upper right corner of the window. Tips, tutorials, and online help are displayed for this topic.

Chapter 15 Using the UMH System Interface

This chapter content describes the Universal Management Host system interface, one of the two management interfaces available for Dell SonicWALL Analyzer. The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer UMH system interface contains similar configuration settings for Microsoft Windows and Virtual Appliance deployments.

The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Virtual Appliance UMH interface contains the following settings that are not applicable to Windows deployments:

- System > Time
- System > File Manager
- System > Shutdown
- Network > Settings
- Network > Routes



Note Microsoft Windows deployments can skip these settings as they only apply to Virtual Appliance deployments

This section includes the following subsections:

- Overview of the UMH System Interface on page 188
- Configuring UMH System Settings on page 189
- Configuring UMH Network Options (Virtual Appliance) on page 206
- Configuring UMH Deployment Options on page 207

Overview of the UMH System Interface

The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer UMH system interface is used for system management of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer instance, including registration and licensing, setting the administrator password, configuring network and database settings, selecting the deployment role, and configuring other system settings.

When installing SonicWALL Universal Management Suite on a host, a Web server is installed to provide the system management interface. The system interface is available by default at http://localhost/appliance/ after restarting the system.

System	Status Information	
tatus	Status Information	
icenses	General	
Time Administration Settings Diagnostics File Manager Backup/Restore Shutdown Q Network Network Deployment		SonicWALL Universal Management Appliance 00401024010F 7.0 (Build: 7026.1735 - Wednesday December 21, 2011 09:22:22 AM PST) Licensed for Analyzer Analyzer viewpoint66.sonicwall.com [10.203.23.66] Jan 20, 2012 01:52:13 PM PDT Dec 21 10:27:35 SonicLinux (VM) Intel Xeon (2.40 GHz) Cache: 12288 (2 Logical CPUs) 3040 MB 0.07 GB (of Total 0.75 GB) 167.85 GB (of Total 240.46 GB) titon <i>Getting Started Guides</i> are available at the enter and the Product Guide Library.

Switching to the Application Interface



To switch between the System interface and the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer application interface, click **Switch** in the top right corner of the interface.

Viewing Online Help and Tips



To display context sensitive help for the current page, click **Help** in the top right corner of the interface.



Help can change to **Tips** if the current page has any context sensitive tips or video tutorials.

Clicking **Tips** displays dynamic links for white papers, videos, knowledge base articles, other references, and online help.

Tips and Tutorials - Microsoft I...
about:blank
Tips and Tutorials
KB 7308: How to install ViewPoint Service Pack
Online Help
Tips and Tutorials
KB 4722: Transfer ViewPoint to new hardware on a different machine (SQL Server or MSDE)
KB 6214: Transfer ViewPoint to new hardware on a different machine (MySQL)
KB 6512: Change location of ViewPoint Database (SQL Server or MSDE)
Online Help

Logging Out of the UMH System Interface



To log out of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer UMH system interface, click **Logout** in the top right corner of the interface.

Configuring UMH System Settings

This section describes the tasks you can do on the System pages of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer UMH system interface. The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer UMH system interface contains similar configuration settings for Microsoft Windows and Virtual Appliance deployments. The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Virtual Appliance UMH interface contain the following settings that are not applicable to Windows deployments. Microsoft Windows deployments can skip these settings as they only apply to Virtual Appliance deployments:

- System > Time
- System > File Manager
- System > Shutdown

See the following sections:

- Viewing System Status on page 190
- Managing System Licenses on page 190
- Configuring System Time Settings (Virtual Appliance) on page 200
- Configuring System Administration Settings on page 201
- Managing System Settings on page 201
- Using System Diagnostics on page 202
- Using System File Manager (Virtual Appliance) on page 204
- Using System Backup/Restore on page 205
- Using System Shutdown (Virtual Appliance) on page 205

Viewing System Status

The **System > Status** page provides the general information about the installation, including the name that identifies the system as a SonicWALL Universal Management Host, the serial number of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer instance, the software version, licensing status, and the system role. For Dell SonicWALL Analyzer, the role is always "Analyzer."

System	Status Information	
atus	Status Information	
censes	General	
ime dministration ettings iagnostics lie Manager ackup/Restore hutdown 2 Network 3 Deployment	Name Serial Number Version License Role System Host Name/IP Current Time Last Boot Time Operating System CPU RAM Available Disk Space on Install Partition Data Partition	SonicWALL Universal Management Appliance 00401024010F 7.0 (Bullid: 7026.1735 - Wednesday December 21, 2011 09:22:22 AM PST) Licensed for Analyzer Analyzer viewpoint66.sonicwall.com [10.203.23.66] Jan 20, 2012 01:52:13 PM PDT Dec 21 10:27:35 SonicLinux (VM) Intel Xeon (2.40 GHz) Cache: 12288 (2 Logical CPUs) 3040 MB 0.07 GB (of Total 0.75 GB) 167.85 GB (of Total 240.46 GB)

Under System, the host name of the computer is listed, along with the time and other information about the host computer.

At the bottom of the page, a link is provided to access the *Getting Started Guide* that takes you to the online help table of contents.

Managing System Licenses

The **System > Licenses** page provides buttons for managing, refreshing, and uploading licenses. The page displays the status of Analyzer and Global Management System licenses. The Global Management System license status shows the status of your SonicWALL GMS Free Trial, if activated. If you choose to upgrade to SonicWALL GMS, this page shows the Global Management System as fully licensed.

The value in the Count column indicates the number of appliances for which this SonicWALL Analyzer or SonicWALL GMS instance is licensed for reporting or management. For Dell SonicWALL Analyzer, this value is usually "unlimited," but for SonicWALL GMS, the base license is either for 10 nodes or 25 nodes, and additional node licenses can be purchased in various increments. The Expiration column indicates the expiration date of the license. If no date is shown, the license is perpetual, and does not expire.

Status	License Management			
Licenses				Serial Number: 00401024010
Time Administration	Security Service	Status	Count	Expiration
Settings	Global Management System	Not Licensed		
Diagnostics File Manager	ViewPoint	Licensed	Unlimited	
Backup/Restore Shutdown	Support Service	Status	Count	Expiration
👰 Network		Manage Li	icenses Refresh Li	icenses Upload Licenses
🔮 Deployment		Hover	over the buttons for m	ore information on the action

To display the MySonicWALL login page, click **Manage Licenses**. You can purchase licenses and obtain license keysets on MySonicWALL.

Click **Refresh Licenses** to refresh the license status on this page.

To upload a new license, click **Upload Licenses** and browse to a license file on your computer.

🖉 Upload Lic	enses - Microsoft Internet Explorer provided 🔳 🗖 🔀
Upload Licen	ses
Serial Number:	004010234A57
License File:	Browse
	Upload Cancel

Upgrading from Analyzer to GMS

SonicWALL Analyzer installations have the option of upgrading to SonicWALL GMS without reinstalling. You can start a 30-day Free Trial of SonicWALL GMS by clicking a button or link in either the Analyzer or Universal Management Host interface and following a simple procedure. When you are ready to finalize the upgrade, your SonicWALL reseller can provide you with the license key for a seamless transition to SonicWALL GMS.

When five or more registered devices are connected to SonicWALL Analyzer reporting, **Try GMS Free - 30 Days** appears next to the tabs at the top of the SonicWALL Analyzer management interface.

)ashboard	Firewall	SRA	CDP	Console	Try GMS Free 30 Days
-----------	----------	-----	-----	---------	-------------------------

You can also start the Free Trial by clicking **Manage Licenses** on the **System > Licenses** page of the Universal Management Host interface, and then clicking the **Try** link.

▼ 💂 System Status	License Management					
Licenses					Serial Numbe	er: 00401022FDDC
Administration	Security Service	Status	Free Trial	Manage Service	Count	Expiration
Settings	Global Management System	Not Licensed	Try	Upgrade		
Diagnostics	ViewPoint	Licensed			Unlimited	
🕨 🥞 Deployment						
					Return to	License Summary

For details on enabling the SonicWALL GMS Free Trial and purchasing the SonicWALL GMS upgrade license, see the following sections:

- Enabling the GMS Free Trial from Analyzer on page 192
- Enabling the GMS Free Trial from the UMH Interface on page 194
- Completing the Free Trial Upgrade on page 195
- Configuring Appliances for GMS Management on page 197
- Purchasing a SonicWALL GMS Upgrade on page 199

Enabling the GMS Free Trial from Analyzer

When five or more devices are connected to SonicWALL Analyzer reporting, **Try GMS Free** - **30 Days** appears next to the tabs at the top of the SonicWALL Analyzer management interface.

To find out how many devices your SonicWALL Analyzer installation is handling, log in to MySonicWALL and navigate to the **My Products** page. Click the link for your SonicWALL Analyzer installation to get to the **Service Management** page, and scroll to the bottom. See a list of appliances under **Associated Products**.

To enable the 30-day SonicWALL GMS Free Trial from the SonicWALL Analyzer management interface, complete the following steps:

Step 1 In the SonicWALL Analyzer management interface, click **Try GMS Free - 30 Days** next to the tabs at the top of the page.



Step 2 The Analyzer Upgrade Tool launches and guides you through the process of installing the Free Trial or Upgrade. The tool displays the Upgrade Requirements – Licensing screen. Before migrating to GMS, ensure that all appliances under Analyzer reporting are registered to the same MySonicWALL account. Follow the steps provided in the screen, and then click Proceed.

6	
he sar is the	int to GMS 5.1 upgrade (GMS Free Trial or Full License), requires that all appliances in your ViewPoint software be registered to the MySonitWALL account. If appliances are not migrated prior to this upgrade, GMS will be missing essential functionality sup ability to license services and perform firmware upgrades. If this is the case, places abort the upgrade and consolidate all the ces in your ViewPoint software into the same MySonicWALL account following the steps below. Otherwise, click "Proceed" to re.
1.	Gather the MySonicWALL login info for the appliance and log into the account.
2.	After logging into MySonicWALL, navigate to the "My Products" screen and locate the appliance.
	Important: Make note of the serial number and authentication code for future reference,
3.	Locate the "delete" button option in the "Service Management" screen in the specific MySonicWALL account and select it.
4.	Click on "Confirm Deletion" prompt.
5.	This appliance is now ready for migration to GMS 5.1.
	Repeat steps 1 thru 4 for the rest of the appliances under ViewPoint as needed.

Step 3 The Upgrade Requirements – System screen displays the recommended operating system, database, and hardware system requirements. Click **Proceed**.

	Upgrade Requirements - System
lease check the recommended sy: ystem. Click "Proceed" to start th	stem requirements below to make sure your system is qualified for upgrading to be an all-in-one GM e upgrade procedure.
Recommended System Re	quirements
Operating System	Microsoft@ Environment: Windows 2000 Server (SP4), Windows 2000 Professional (SP4), Windows XP Professional (SP2), Windows 2003 Server (SP2)
Database	Microsoft@ Environment: Microsoft SQL Server 2000 (SP4) and Microsoft SQL Server 2005 (SP2) on either Windows 2000 Server (SP4) or 2003 Server (SP1)
Hardware	x86 Environment: Minimum 3 GHz processor dual-core CPU Intel processor, 2 GB RAM, and 300 GB disk space
Current System Informatio	n
Operating System	Windows XP (x86-5.1)
CPU	2.327 GHz
RAM	2.008 GB
	Proceed Cancel

Step 4 The Analyzer Upgrade Tool displays the login screen for MySonicWALL. Enter your MySonicWALL credentials and click **Submit**.

tep 1. Upgrade the License Use the license upgrade screen provided below to upgrade the license from Viewpoint to GM5 mySonicWALL.com Login mySonicWALL.com is a one-stop resource for registering all your SonicWALL Internet Security Appliances and managing all your SonicWALL provides you with an easy to use interface to manage services and upgrades for multiple SonicWALL appliances. For more information on mySonicWALL please visit the FAQ. If you do not have a mySonicWALL accurt, please click here to create one. Please enter your existing mySonicWALL.com username (or email address) and password below: Email Address/User Name:	ViewPoint Upgrade Tool					
mySonicWALL.com Login mySonicWALL.com is a one-stop resource for registering all your SonicWALL Internet Security Appliances and managing all your SonicWALL security service upgrades and changes. mySonicWALL provides you with an easy to use interface to manage services and upgrades for multiple SonicWAL appliances. For more information on mySonicWALL please visit the FAQ. If you do not have a mySonicWall account, please click here to create one. Please enter your existing mySonicWALL.com username (or email address) and password below: Email Address/User Name: Password:	tep 1. Upgrade the License					
mySonicWALL.com is a one-stop resource for registering all your SonicWALL Internet Security Appliances and managing all your SonicWALL security service upgrades and changes. mySonicWALL provides you with an easy to use Interface to manage services and upgrades for multiple SonicWALL appliances. For more information on mySonicWALL please visit the <u>FAQ</u> . If you do not have a mySonicWAll account, please click <u>here</u> to create one. Please enter your existing mySonicWALL.com username (or email address) and password below: Email Address/User Name:	Use the license upgrade screen provided	d below to upgrade the license from Viewpoint to GMS				
managing all your SonicWALL security service upgrades and changes. mySonicWALL provides you with an aesy to use interface to manage services and upgrades for multiple SonicWALL applicates. For more information on mySonicWALL please visit the <u>FAQ</u> . If you do not have a mySonicWall account, please click <u>here</u> to create one. Please enter your existing mySonicWALL.com username (or email address) and password below: Email Address/User Name:	nySonicWALL.com Login					
	use interface to manage services and u mySonicWALL please visit the <u>FAQ</u> . If y Please enter your existing mySonicWAL	upgrades for multiple SonicWALL appliances. For more information on you do not have a mySonicWall account, please click <u>here</u> to create one.				
Submit	Password:					
		Submit				

Step 5 In the next Analyzer Upgrade Tool page, click **Try** in the **Free Trial** column for Global Management System.

	V	'iewpoint L	Jpgrade Tool		
Step 1. Upgrade the License Use the license upgrade screen		upgrade the lice	ense from Viewpoint to (SMS	
Security Service	Status	Free Trial	Manage Service	Count	Expiration
Security Service Global Management System	Status Not Licensed	Free Trial	Manage Service	Count	Expiration

Step 6 From this point, the upgrade process continues with the same steps for access from either the SonicWALL Analyzer interface or the Universal Management Host interface. To continue the procedure, complete the steps in the Completing the Free Trial Upgrade on page 195.

Enabling the GMS Free Trial from the UMH Interface

To enable the 30-day Free Trial of SonicWALL GMS from the Universal Management Host interface on your SonicWALL Analyzer system, complete the following steps:

Step 1 In the Universal Management Host interface, navigate to the System > Licenses page and click Manage Licenses.

 System Status Licenses 	License Management		Se	erial Number: 00401022FDDC
Administration Settings Diagnostics Deployment	Security Service Global Management System ViewPoint	Status Not Licensed Licensed Manage Licenses	Count Unlimited	Expiration enses Upload Licenses

Step 2 If you are not already logged into MySonicWALL, the MySonicWALL login screen is displayed. Enter your MySonicWALL credentials in the appropriate fields and log in. Step 3 On the next page, click Try in the Free Trial column for Global Management System.

• 📮	System	License Management					_
	Status	Electrise Fidingement					
	Licenses					Serial Numbe	er: 00401022FDDC
	Administration	Security Service	Status	Free Trial	Manage Service	Count	Expiration
	Settings	Global Management System	Not Licensed	Try	Upgrade		
	Diagnostics	ViewPoint	Licensed			Unlimited	
۱ 🍕	Deployment						
						Return to	License Summary

Step 4 From this point, the upgrade process continues with the same steps for access from either the SonicWALL Analyzer interface or the Universal Management Host interface. To continue the procedure, complete the steps in Completing the Free Trial Upgrade on page 195.

Completing the Free Trial Upgrade

This procedure provides the common upgrading steps for access from either the SonicWALL Analyzer interface or the Universal Management Host interface. To get to this point in the process, follow the steps described in one of the two preceding sections:

- Enabling the GMS Free Trial from Analyzer on page 192
- Enabling the GMS Free Trial from the UMH Interface on page 194

To continue the upgrade, complete the following steps:

Step 1 In the Analyzer Upgrade Tool page, click **Continue**.

	Viewpoint Upgrade Tool
itep 1. Upgrade the License	
Use the license upgrade screen pr	ovided below to upgrade the license from Viewpoint to GMS
Global Management System	Free Trial
Thank you for your interest in Glo	bal Management System.
If you choose to purchase Global	Management System subscription, you may do so at any time during or after the trial.
Continue	Cancel

Step 2 The next screen provides a summary of GMS and Analyzer status. Verify that the Try link for the Free Trial is gone and only the Upgrade link remains. The Expiration column displays the expiration date of your Free Trial. You can click Upgrade at any time during the Free Trial to purchase the SonicWALL GMS upgrade. Click Proceed.

Viewpoint Upgrade Tool					
Step 1. Upgrade the License Below is the summary of the upgraded licenses. Please click the "Proceed" button to continue to the next step					
below is the summary of the upg	raded licenses.	Please click the	"Proceed" button to co	ntinue to the n	iext step
Security Service	Status	Free Trial	Manage Service	Count	Expiration
Global Management System	Free Trial		Upgrade	15	25 Jul 2009
ViewPoint	Licensed			Unlimited	
			Proceed		

Step 3 In the next Analyzer Upgrade Tool page, you begin the configuration for SonicWALL GMS instep 2 of the upgrade process. This page displays two sections:

Automatic Configuration – Contains a list of SonicWALL firewall or CSM appliances in your Analyzer installation. These appliances are automatically configured for SonicWALL GMS management.

Manual Configuration – Contains a list of SonicWALL Aventail, SSL-VPN, or CDP appliances in your Analyzer installation. You must manually configure these appliances for SonicWALL GMS management. See the Configuring Appliances for GMS Management on page 197 for detailed instructions on enabling SonicWALL GMS management on these appliances.

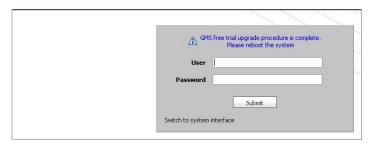
Step 4 When ready, click **Proceed**.

1 appliances currently in the system. These configured to support GMS .
Appliance Serial Number
0017C5269510
0017C51C655C
-UTM appliances currently in the system. These ration to support GMS .
Appliance Serial
0006B1275C34

Step 5 When the configuration finishes, the Analyzer Upgrade Tool displays the completion dialog box. Click **Close** to log out of the console and restart the system.

Viewpoint Upgrade Tool	
You have complete the upgrade procedure.	
please click "Close" button to logout the console and reboot the box	
close	
	- SONICWALL

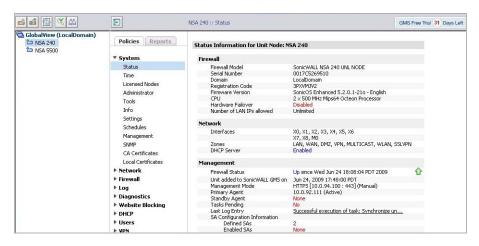
Step 6 The GMS login page appears and requests that you reboot the system. Reboot the system. If a reboot is not done, you might encounter problems with the correct IP Address appearing.



Step 7 After rebooting, log in with your Analyzer credentials.

When you log in, you should see a button displaying the number of days left in your Free Trial at the top of the page.

Step 8 On the **System** > **Status** page for connected appliances, you can view the log entries for task synchronization and automatic addressing mode, related to the GMS configuration.



Configuring Appliances for GMS Management

To manually configure the appliances listed in the Manual Configuration section of the Analyzer Upgrade Tool page (see Step 3 on page 196), complete the following steps for each appliance:

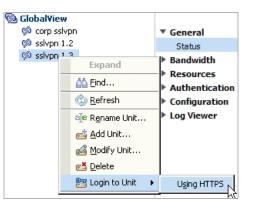
- **Step 1** In the SonicWALL GMS management interface, click the tab at the top of the page that corresponds to the type of appliance, such as **SSL-VPN** or **CDP**.
- Step 2 In the left pane, right-click one of the listed appliances and select Modify Unit.

Step 3 In the Modify Unit screen in the right pane, copy the appliance IP address in the **Managed** Address section to your clipboard, or make a note of it.

	📥 Modify Unit	
MyReportsView (LocalDo	Unit Name:	Eng
Eng Eng Corp	Serial Number:	0006B1278F48
🗂 Eng Test	Managed Address:	Determine automatically Specify manually: 10.128.1.2 Aventail SSL-VPN appliance
	Login Name:	admin
	Password:	****
	Management Mode:	Using Existing Tunnel or LAN
		Using Management VPN Tunnel
	HTTPS Port:	443
	SA Encryption Key:	
	SA Authentication Key:	
	Agent IP Address:	192.168.252.12
	Standby Agent IP:	None
		✓OK XCancel
4		

Step 4 Click Cancel.

Step 5 In the left pane, right-click the same appliance and select Login to Unit > Using HTTPS.



Step 6 In the appliance management interface, navigate to the **System > Administration** page.

66 (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1) (1)	Ξ	Eng :: Status	OMS Free Trar 39 Days Left	User: admn@LocalDomain Administr	ators
MyReportsView (LocalDomain	SonicWALL - Virtual Of				
🏝 Eng Test	SONICWALL	SSL-VPN		ල ල Help Logou	
	System Setus Licenses Time Settings Administration Certificates Monitoring Diagnovalus Restart P Reinwork Partals	Heartbeak Interval (seconds): Send Heartbeak Ratus Messages Only Note: GMS 4.0 or later is required to remotely no	5 514 60 noge His SSL VIW applance.		

Step 7 Under GMS Settings, select Enable GMS Management, or verify that it is selected.

- **Step 8** In the **GMS Host Name or IP Address** field, paste or type the appliance IP address that you obtained from the Modify Unit screen in Step 3.
- **Step 9** Click **Accept** at the top of the appliance interface screen.
- Step 10 Click Logout in the top right corner of the appliance interface screen.
- **Step 11** Repeat these steps for each appliance listed in the Manual Configuration section of the Analyzer Upgrade Tool page.

Purchasing a SonicWALL GMS Upgrade

You can purchase an upgrade to SonicWALL GMS at any time during the 30-day Free Trial.

To purchase the SonicWALL GMS license, complete the following steps:

Step 1 In the SonicWALL GMS interface, click GMS Free Trial X Days Left, where X is the number of days left in the Free Trial.

ult Page GMS Free Trial 30 Days Left

Step 2 In the Buy GMS page, click I want to upgrade to GMS now.

SONICWALL

Step 3 The Console > Licenses > Product Licenses page is displayed. Click Manage Licenses.

	Product Licenses		GMS F	Free Trial 30 Doys Left User: admin	@LocalDomain Administr
▶ User Settings ▶ Log ▶ Tasks	License Summary Last SonicWALL Registration Site contact: Apr 02 2009 03:14PM			Serial N	mber: 00101022F0DC
Management	Security Service	Status	Count	Expiration	
 Reports Diagnostics Events 	Global Management System ViewPoint	Free Trial Licensed	15 Unlimited	02 May 2009	
* Licenses					
Product Licenses			Manage Licenses	Refresh Licenses Upload Licenses	ses
Activation Codes Deployments Help			Landrada		

Step 4 In the next page, in the Manage Service column for Global Management System, click Upgrade.

roduct Licenses			GMS F	ree Trial 30 Days	Left User: admin@Loo
License Summary					
Last SonicWALL Registration Site con	act: Apr 02 2009 03:	14PM			Serial Numbe
Security Service	Status	Free Trial	Manage Service	Count	Expiration
Global Management System	Free Trial		Upgrade	15	02 May 2009
ViewPoint	Licensed			Unlimited	
				Re	turn to License Summary

Step 5 The next page has Serial Number and Authentication Code fields for SonicWALL GMS. You must contact your SonicWALL reseller to complete the purchase and obtain the 12-character serial number and authentication code. Type in the values to the Serial Number and Authentication Code fields.

License Summary	
Last SonicWALL Registration Site contact: Apr 02 2009 03:14PM	Serial Number:
Enter your new 12 character Software Serial Number and Authentication Code	2
Serial Number:	
Authentication Code: What is this?	
Friendly Name:	
GMS upgrade keys:	
	(Required if current Viewpoint installation is larger than retail upgrade
	Submit

- **Step 6** Enter a descriptive name for the SonicWALL GMS installation into the **Friendly Name** field. This name appears in your MySonicWALL account.
- Step 7 If your SonicWALL Analyzer installation currently handles more than 10 appliances, when you upgrade to SonicWALL GMS you must purchase additional SonicWALL GMS license(s) to manage the extra appliances. The standard "10-node" SonicWALL GMS license provided with the Free Trial supports up to 10 managed appliances. Enter the license keys for any additional SonicWALL GMS licenses into the GMS upgrade keys text box, one key per line.
- Step 8 Click Submit. The License page is displayed, showing that SonicWALL GMS is now licensed.

Configuring System Time Settings (Virtual Appliance)

The **System > Time** page allows you to automatically configure the date and time using NTP servers.

Status	System Time				
Licenses	Time (hh:mm:ss):	14 - : 03	: 57 -		
Time					
Administration	Date:	January 🚽	20 🚽 2012	w.	
Settings Diagnostics File Manager Backup/Restore	TimeZone:		cific Time (US & Can	ada); Tijuana	¥
Shutdown	NTP Se	rver (max: 5)			
Network	1.pool.ntp.or	g	Θ		
0	2.pool.ntp.or	g			
😚 Deployment	3.pool.ntp.or	g			
	👍 Add NTP	Server			
	Note: Automatically	y adjusts clock for d	aylight saving time		
				Update	e Reset

To manually select the time, under Systems Time select the time, date, and timezone.

To automatically set the time using an NTP server, select the Set time automatically using the **NTP** check box. Next, select the **Add NTP Server** icon, and enter the IP address or domain name of the NTP server. Click **Update** to submit your system time configuration changes. Alternatively, click **Reset** to reset the system time to factory defaults.

Configuring System Administration Settings

The **System > Administration** page allows you to configure the system behavior for administrative login sessions.

▼ 🕎 System Status	Host Settings	
Licenses Time	Inactivity Timeout:	-1 Minute(s) (-1 = never times out)
Administration	Enhanced Security Access (ESA)	
Settings Diagnostics File Manager Backup/Restore Shutdown Sutdown Metwork Beployment	Enforce Password Security Number of failed login attempts before user can be locked out: User lockout minutes: Number of days to force password change: Administator Password	6 30 90
	Administrator Name:	admin
	Current Password:	•••••
	New Password:	•••••
	Confirm Password:	•••••
		Update Reset

Under Host Settings, enter the number of minutes of inactivity allowed before the session is logged out. A setting of **-1** allows an unlimited amount of inactivity without being logged out.

Under Enhanced Security Access, you can configure the number of failed login attempts before the admin account is locked out, and the number of minutes that the lockout lasts. You can also configure the number of days before the admin account password must be changed.

Under Administrator Password, you can change the administrator password for the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer application. Enter the current password for the system administrator (or root) account into the Current Password field, and then enter the new password into both the **New Password** and **Confirm Password** fields.

After making any changes on this page, click **Update**. To revert the fields on the page to their default settings, click **Reset**.

Managing System Settings

The **System > Settings** page provides a way to upload new Dell SonicWALL Analyzer software or service packs to the system. Click **Browse** to browse to the file you wish to upload, and then click **Apply**.

System Status	Firmware Upgrade/Service Pack/Hotfix
Licenses Time Administration	Upload the Firmware Upgrade/Service Pack/Hotfix file in order to update the system. Current Version: 7.0 (Build: 7026.1735 - Wednesday December 21, 2011 09:22:22 AM PST) (Click here for histor
Settings	Upload file: Choose File No file chosen
Diagnostics File Manager Backup/Restore Shutdown	Apply
0	Reinitialize Appliance to Factory Settings
 Setwork Beployment 	Reinitialize the settings for this SonicWALL GMS appliance to the factory default values. Reinitialize

The page shows the current version of SonicWALL UMS, and provides a History link that displays the history of all hot fixes and firmware updates that were applied to the system.

The Reinitialize Appliance to Factory Settings section allows the administrator to reset all UMH system settings to factory defaults. Click **Reinitialize** to reset to factory defaults. A pop-up warning message displays for the administrator to confirm this process.

The page at 10.203.23.66:8	ō says: 🛛 🗶
This action will reinitialize the applia All updated configurations on this a defaults.	
Note: The appliance will automatica to take effect. The initialization process could take	
Do you want to continue?	
	OK Cancel

Click **OK**, the system reboots and the reinitialization process takes 10-15 minutes to complete. After the reinitialization process is complete, the administrator needs to log back in to the management interface to confirm the system settings are now restored to factory defaults.

Using System Diagnostics

The **System > Diagnostics** page is used to set log levels, test connectivity to servers, generate Tech Support Reports, and to search and download system log files.

System Status	Debug Log Settings
Licenses Time Administration Settings Diagnostics	Setting debug levels allows for faster troubleshooting of potential application issues. This action creates debug log files on all the Analyzer systems in this deployment and could hamper application performance and also fill up disk space. You should reset to <i>No Debug</i> for normal operation as soon as the potential issue has been resolved. Note: - The debug level should only be set based on guidance from SonicWALL Technical Support - The higher the debug level, the more the system resources that will be used up to generate debug data and in turn lower the overall
File Manager Backup/Restore	system performance. System Debug Level: No Debug
Shutdown Metwork	Update Reset
Deployment	Test Connectivity Database Connectivity License Manager Connectivity License Manager host: licensemanager.sonicwall.com SMTP Server Connectivity Currently configured SMTP Server: mail.sonicwall.com at port: 25

Under Debug Log Settings, select the log level from the **System Debug Level** drop-down list. Select from the following system debug verbosity levels:

- No Debug
- Level 1 (Codepath)
- Level 2 (Simple)
- Level 3 (Logic)
- Level 4 (Detailed)
- Level 5 (Highly Detailed)

The No Debug level setting provides no debug information, and the Level 5 (Highly Detailed) setting provides the maximum debug information.

In the Test Connectivity section, select one of the following radio buttons and then click **Test** to verify connectivity to that server:

- Database Connectivity Tests connectivity to the database server configured on the Deployment > Roles page.
- License Manager Connectivity Type the host name or IP address into the License Manager Host field and click **Test** to test connectivity to that server.
- SMTP Server Connectivity Tests connectivity to the SMTP server configured on the Deployment > Settings page.

In the Download System/Log Files section, you can enter a filter, or search value, into either of the **Search Filter** fields, and then press **Enter**, to locate log entries of interest. Click **Export Logs** to save the log files to a file on your computer.

🔻 💂 System	Download System/Log Files
Status Licenses	Technical Support Report (TSR)
Time	✓ Logs
Administration Settings	Search Filter Close
Diagnostics File Manager Backup/Restore Shutdown Sutdown Metwork Deployment	Application Logs Specify filters to narrow the search. DbgAppliance0.log [77.26 MB] [01/19/2012 10:26:00] #.log - for files with extension log DefaultName.wri [0 Bytes] [12/15/2011 11:59:19] #.log - for files with extension log phase2_1324022393481.log [999 Bytes] [12/16/2011 #.og - for files with 3 letter extensions phase2_1324045795183.log [999 Bytes] [12/20/2011 dending in 'g' phase2_13240491080353.log [999 Bytes] [12/21/2011 10:14:08] StdEventManager0.log [1.7 KB] [12/21/2011 10:28:20] StdMontor0.log [1.6 KB] [12/21/2011 10:28:18] StdScheduler0.log [1.32 KB] [10/20/202 12:15:25] \$tdUpdateManager0.log [6,451.35 KB] [01/20/2012 02:17:17]
	There are 471 files to view in this category. Image: System 1 Image: System 2 System 2
	Search Filter:
	Please filter the files using the Search Filter box above.
	There are 237 files to view in this category.
	Export Logs

To generate a TSR (Technical Support Report), select **Technical Support Report (TSR)**, and then click **Export Logs**.

Using System File Manager (Virtual Appliance)

The **System > File Manager** page provides access to the file system. Copy files or export files to these folders. Administrators often use this page to export system settings preference files (etc/prefs) to another directory location for backup archiving.

System Status	File System				
Licenses Time Administration Settings Diagnostics File Manager Backup/Restore Shutdown Shutdown Shutdown Metwork Subployment	Select Folder:	Select one Select one /etc /etc/mbs /etc/Prefs /etc/Prefs /etc/Prefs/old /Firmware/Current /Firmware/Current /Firmware/Old /Logs /mysol/data /syslogs/badSyslogs /fsyslogs/badSyslogs /fsyslogs/badSyslogs /Famp /Tomcat/conf /Tomcat/logs /Tomcat/temp /ViewPoint/reports	Search Filter: Select Folder dropdown a	above.	×
				Export	Delete

To complete a file set export, select a folder from the pull-down menu. The page refreshes and displays the contents of the selected folder. Individual files can be exported or deleted. Click **Selected Folder** to select all the files for this folder. For managing a batch of files, select multiple files from the list and click **Export** or **Delete**.

Administrators can also use the file manager to import files, such as, third-party MIB files to the directory folder for multiple-vendor solution interoperability. To import or to upload a file, select a folder from the pull-down menu. The page refreshes and displays the contents of the selected folder. In the top-right corner of the page, click the plus icon to upload a file. Next, click **Choose File** to open the file management dialog box. In the file management dialog box, navigate to the file you would like to upload and click **Open**. The selected file is now displayed next to **Choose File**. Click **Upload** to complete the file manager import.

System Status	File System	
Licenses	Select Folder: /etc/mibs Search Filter: *.*	• -
Time	aventail [438 Bytes] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
Administration	aventailNGServer [5.99 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	D 🖓 🔺
Settings Diagnostics	aventailSecurityHistory [2.61 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
File Manager	aventailServiceHealth [2.93 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
Backup/Restore	aventailSystemHealth [7.32 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	📮 🖯 🔰
Shutdown	aventailSystemInfo [1.54 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
-	HOST-RESOURCES-MIB [49.77 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
🕨 👱 Network	RFC1213-MIB [100.41 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
Deployment	SNMP-COMMUNITY.MIB [3.83 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
	SNWL-COMMON-MIB.MIB [2.16 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
	SNWL-SSLVPN-MIB.MIB [4.24 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
	SONICWALL-FIREWALL-IP-STATISTICS-MIB.MIB [6.33 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
	SONICWALL-FIREWALL-TRAP-MIB.MIB [184.77 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
	SONICWALL-GMS-TRAP-MIB.MIB [9.08 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	
	SONICWALL-SMI.MIB [2.55 KB] [12/21/2011 07:59:02]	

Using System Backup/Restore

The **System > Backup/Restore** page helps you schedule and create immediate snapshots of configuration and data on your system. Note that a minimum of 10GB of free disk space is required to do a backup/restore operation. Navigate to the **System > Status** page to verify available disk space.

You can also offload the backup/reporting data through web services by downloading a Java-based UI tool. This tool helps you setup configurations that can be used to automatically download backup snapshots to a remote location in a reoccurring schedule.

System Status	Manage Backups					
Licenses	This section helps you schedule the creation of snapshots of c disk space is required to perform a backup/restore operation.					of free
Administration Settings	You can also offload the backup/reporting data through web s configurations that can be used to automatically download sch					etup
Diagnostics	Click here to see restore history.					
File Manager	# Available Snapshots	Date	Product	Version	Size	
Backup/Restore	1 O Analyzer_7.0_2012_01_15_21_40_VP_AIOP.zip	2012/01/15 21:40	Analyzer	7.0	19159.98 MB	
Shutdown	2 Analyzer_7.0_2012_01_08_21_40_VP_AIOP.zip	2012/01/08 21:40	Analyzer	7.0	18631.44 MB	
🕨 👱 Network			Download	d Snapshot	Restore Snap	shot
Deployment						
ap bepiotinene	Immediate Backup/Restore					
	Create a new snapshot file and download it immediately: Backup					W
	Upload a snapshot file and use it to restore data: Choose F	ile No file chosen			Restore No	w
	Note: Upload file limit: 2GB. For larger files, please use the off the uploaded snapshot to perform the restore operation.	loader tool to upload the s	mapshot first an	d then use		
	Scheduled Backup Settings					
	Disable Scheduled Backups				Update Settir	ngs
	Backup schedule: Every: Sunday	✓ at 21 ✓ : 40	•			
	Backup snapshots to directory [installDir]: /backup		(This fie appliance		n a GMS/Analyzer	
	Number of snapshots to store 2				Update Settin	ngs
	Note: Scheduled backups will be complete backups of configur will be retained in the specified directory. The maximum value					ackups

Using System Shutdown (Virtual Appliance)

The **System > Shutdown** page allows you to restart or shut down the appliance. Click **Restart** to reboot the system. To stop all the services and database processing, click **Shutdown**.

🛚 💂 System	
Status	Shutdown
Licenses	Warning! This action will disconnect all users.
Time Administration Settings Diagnostics File Manager	This action takes about 3 minutes. Remember that if you made any changes to the settings, you'll need to apply them before you restart or shutdown. Restart Shutdown
Backup/Restore	
Shutdown	
🕨 🙅 Network	
Deployment	

Configuring UMH Network Options (Virtual Appliance)

This section describes the tasks you can do on the Network pages of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer UMH system interface.

See the following sections:

- Configuring Network Settings (Virtual Appliance) on page 206
- Configuring Network Routes (Virtual Appliance) on page 207

Configuring Network Settings (Virtual Appliance)

This section provides network settings configuration procedures for host, networking, and search suffixes. To configure host settings, enter host and domain name information. To configure networking settings, enter host IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and optionally enter DNS server IP addresses. Click **Update** to apply the host and networking settings changes. Click **Reset** to restore these settings to factory defaults.

Search suffixes provide the ability to automatically append a DNS suffix. For example, when you ping "sonicwall" it automatically goes to "sonicwall.engineering." To configure Search Suffixes, click **Add** to include multiple search suffixes, and to remove Search Suffixes, click the check box next to the Search Suffixes list, and click **Delete**.

🖳 System	Host		
Settings	Name:	analyzer777	example: hostname
Routes	Domain:	sonicwall.com	example: domain.com
	Networking		
	Host IP address:	10.203.23.66	
	Subnet mask:	255.255.0.0	
	Default gateway:	10.203.23.1	
	DNS server 1:	10.50.128.53	
	DNS server 2:	10.50.128.52	
	DNS server 3:		
			Update Reset
	Search Suffixes	5	Configure
	🔲 global.sonicwall.co	om	0 🖯
			Add Delete

Configuring Network Routes (Virtual Appliance)

Note The default network route cannot be deleted.

This section provides configuration procedures to add network routes. To add a network route, enter a destination network IP address, network mask, and gateway, and click **Add**. To edit the default network route, click the configure icon. When multiple network routes are added to the list, selecting the check box at the top-left corner of the page selects all the added network routes. Click **Delete** to remove a network route from the list.

System	Network Routes			
Settings	Destination Network	Network Mask	Gateway IP	Configure
Routes	default		10.203.23.1	0
🔮 Deployment			Add	Delete
	😏 Untitled - Google Chrome		li in the second se	
	() 10.203.23.66:85/appliance/addR			
	Add Route			
	Destination Network:			
	Network Mask:			
	Gateway Address:			
	Add	ancel		

Configuring UMH Deployment Options

This section describes the tasks you can do on the Deployment pages of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer UMH system interface.

See the following sections:

- Configuring the Deployment Role on page 208
- Configuring Deployment Settings on page 209
- Controlling Deployment Services on page 211

Configuring the Deployment Role

In a Dell SonicWALL Analyzer installation, the **Deployment > Roles** page provides a way to configure the syslog port and the database settings, and to test database connectivity.

 System Setwork Deployment Roles 	Host Role Configurat		Details
Settings Services	Syslog Server Port	3003	
	Database Configurat	ion	
	Database Type: Database Host: Database Port: Database User: Database Password: Confirm Database Password	MYSQL Iocalhost 3306 gmsadm cord:	
	Database Driver: Database URL:	com.mysql.jdbc.Driver jdbc:mysql://localhost:3306	Test Connectivity

To set the syslog port, enter the port number into the Syslog Server Port field.

Under Database Configuration, to provide credentials with which Dell SonicWALL Analyzer accesses the database, enter the account user name into the **Database User** field, and enter the account password into both the **Database Password** and **Confirm Database Password** fields. Additionally, you can enter a **Database Driver** file name and the **Database URL** for an explicit directory path location.

To test connectivity to the database server, click **Test Connectivity**. A pop-up message displays the database connectivity status.

A Database connection successfully created.
Successfully created connection for URL: jdb::sqlserver://127.0.0.1;instanceName=SNWL Database Type: MS_DB Database Host: 127.0.0.1\SNWL Database Port: 0 Database User: sa Database URL: jdbc:sqlserver://127.0.0.1;instanceName=SNWL
Close

When finished, click **Update** to apply the changes. To revert the fields on the page to their default settings, click **Reset**.

Configuring Deployment Settings

This section describes the UMH/UMA **Deployment > Settings** page, used for Web port, SMTP, and SSL access configuration.

The **Deployment > Settings** page is identical in both the UMH and UMA management interfaces, except for the left navigation pane that shows the Network menu item on the UMA.

🕨 💻 System	Web Port Configurat	ion
🕨 👰 Network	HTTP port:	80
🔻 🥞 Deployment	HTTPS port:	443
Roles		
Settings		Update Reset
Services		
	SMTP Configuration	
	SMTP server:	mail.sonicwall.com Test Connectivity
	Sender address:	uma252@sonicwall.com
	Administrator address:	anair@sonicwall.com
		Update Reset
	SSL Access Configura	ation
	 Default 	
		s you to keep the default certificate that comes with the by the GMS Web Server for SSL access. Filename for the msvpserverks'.
	🔘 Custom	
	Server for SSL acc	is you to upload a custom certificate for use by the GMS Web ess. The original filename of the certificate imported will be vpservercustomks' in the local file system.
	Keystore/Certifical file :	Browse
	Keystore/Certifical password :	e
		View Update Reset

See the following sections:

- Configuring Web Server Settings on page 210
- Configuring SMTP Settings on page 210
- Configuring SSL Access on page 211

Configuring Web Server Settings

Web Server Settings configuration is largely the same on any role:

- Step 1 Navigate to **Deployment > Settings > Web Server Settings** in the /appliance management interface.
- **Step 2** To use a different port for HTTP access to the SonicWALL Analyzer, type the port number into the **HTTP Port** field. The default port is 80.

If you enter another port in this field, the port number must be specified when accessing the appliance management interface or SonicWALL GMS management interface. For example, if port 8080 is entered here, the appliance management interface would be accessed with the URL: http://<*IP* Address>:8080/appliance/.

Step 3 To use a different port for HTTPS access to the SonicWALL Analyzer, type the port number into the **HTTPS Port** field. The default port is 443.

If you enter another port in this field, the port number must be specified when accessing the appliance management interface or SonicWALL GMS management interface. For example, if port 4430 is entered here, the appliance management interface would be accessed with the URL: https://<IP Address>:4430/appliance/.

- Step 4 Click Enable HTTPS Redirection to redirect HTTP to HTTPS when accessing the Analyzer management interface.
- Step 5 In the Public IP text-field, enter the public IP or FQDN of the outside web services.
- Step 6 When you are finished configuring the Web Server Settings, click Update.

Configuring SMTP Settings

The SMTP Configuration section allows you to configure an SMTP server name or IP address, a sender email address, and an administrator email address. You can test connectivity to the configured server.

To configure SMTP settings:

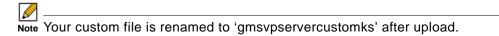
- **Step 1** Navigate to the **Deployment > Settings** page under the **SMTP Configuration** section.
- Step 2 Type the FQDN or IP address of the SMTP server into the SMTP server field.
- Step 3 If the SMTP server in your deployment is set to use authentication, click Use Authentication. This option is necessary for all outgoing Analyzer emails to properly send to the intended recipients. Enter the username in the User field, and enter/confirm the password in the Password and Confirm Password fields. This is the username/password that is used to authenticate against the SMTP server.
- Step 4 Type the email address from which mail will be sent into the Sender address field.
- Step 5 Type the email address of the system administrator into the Administrator address field.
- Step 6 To test connectivity to the SMTP server, click Test Connectivity.
- **Step 7** To apply your changes, click **Update**.

Configuring SSL Access

The SSL Access Configuration section allows you to configure and upload a custom Keystore/Certificate file for SSL access to the GMS appliance, or select the default local keystore.

To configure SSL access, complete the following steps:

- Step 1 Navigate to the Deployment > Settings page under SSL Access Configuration section.
- **Step 2** Select **Default** to keep, or revert to, the default settings, where the default GMS Web Server certificate with 'gmsvpserverks' keystore is used.
- Step 3 Select Custom to upload a custom keystore certificate for GMS SSL access.
- Step 4 In the Keystore/Certificate file field, click Browse to select your certificate file.



- Step 5 Type the password for the keystore certificate into the Keystore/Certificate password field.
- Step 6 Click View to display details about your keystore certificate.
- Step 7 Click Update to submit your changes.

Controlling Deployment Services

The **Deployment > Services** page provides a list of the services that are running on your system as part of Dell SonicWALL Analyzer. It also provides a way to stop or start any of the services.

😟 Network 🔮 Deployment	Host Role Host Role: Analyzer	Details
Roles	Host Services	
Settings	Service Name	Current State
Services	Dell SonicWALL Universal Management Suite - Update Manager	Started (Enabled)
	Dell SonicWALL Universal Management Suite - Syslog Collector	Started (Enabled)
	Dell SonicWALL Universal Management Suite - Web Server	Started (Enabled)
	Dell SonicWALL Universal Management Suite - Scheduler	Started (Enabled)
	Dell SonicWALL Universal Management Suite - Reports Database	Started (Enabled)
	Dell SonicWALL Universal Management Suite - Reports Scheduler	Started (Enabled)
	Dell SonicWALL Universal Management Suite - Reports Summarizer	Started (Enabled)
	Dell SonicWALL Universal Management Suite - Database	Started (Enabled)

To stop a service that is currently Enabled, select the check box for that service and then click **Disable/Stop**.

To start a service that is currently Disabled, select the check box for that service and then click **Enable/Start**.

To restart a service that is either Enabled or Disabled, select the check box for that service and then click **Restart**.

Appendix A Upgrading

This appendix is designed to help you upgrade Dell SonicWALL Analyzer. If you have not used Dell SonicWALL Analyzer before, you might want to familiarize yourself with Dell SonicWALL Analyzer concepts and features.

This appendix contains the following sections:

- Upgrading SonicWALL ViewPoint 6.0 to Analyzer 7.2 on page 213
- Upgrading from Analyzer to GMS on page 215
- Miscellaneous Procedures and Tips on page 224

Upgrading SonicWALL ViewPoint 6.0 to Analyzer 7.2

The Dell SonicWALL Analyzer cannot be directly upgraded from ViewPoint 6.0 to Analyzer 7.2, but it can be upgraded from Analyzer 7.0. To upgrade the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer from a version earlier than 7.0, you need to upgrade to major versions of Analyzer until you reach 7.0, then you can upgrade to 7.2. To upgrade major versions of Dell SonicWALL Analyzer, use the Universal Management Suite installer and complete the following:

- Step 1 Log on to your Dell SonicWALL Analyzer management computer as administrator (Windows). Launch the SonicWALL Universal Management Suite installer, by double-clicking the file sw_gmsvp_win_eng_x.x.xxxx.exe (where "xxxx" represent the exact version numbers). It can take several seconds for the InstallAnywhere self-extractor to initialize.
- Step 2 In the Introduction screen, click Next.
- Step 3 In the License Agreement screen, select the radio button next to I accept the terms of the License Agreement. Click Next.
- **Step 4** When the installer detects that a previous version of Analyzer/ViewPoint is currently installed on the system, a notification is displayed. Click **Install** to continue the upgrade.
- Step 5 The installer begins installing the files, using the existing installation folder, IP address to which Dell SonicWALL Services bind for capturing syslog and SNMP packets, and Web port settings.

Step 6 The Installer displays the installation progress during the few minutes required. Upon completion, whether or not the system has Windows Firewall enabled, a dialog is displayed notifying you to either disable the firewall or manually open the syslog and SNMP ports, and to ensure that these ports are open on your network gateway or firewall. Click **OK**.

slogs/9	5NMP Capture X
	Syslogs/SNMP Capture
	If you have a Personal Firewall software running on this system, please disable it for proper functioning of this product. Alternatively, you should enable ports for Syslogs (typically 514), Syslog Forwarding (typically 21007) and SNMP traps (typically 162) on the Personal Firewall.
	Also, if you plan to enable any remote appliance for HTTPS Management, you will need to configure the Firewall/Gateway in front of this system to forward UDP Syslog (port 514) and SNMP (port 162) packets to this system.
	Otherwise, this Universal Management system will not receive any Syslogs and SNMP traps for its proper functioning.

Step 7 The Important Registration Information screen provides the URL for access to the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Universal Management Host system interface after upgrade completion, as well as information about registration.

The default URL for accessing the interface from the local system is: http://localhost:80/

The default credentials are: User name – **admin** Password – **password**

Note To register for a Dell SonicWALL Analyzer installation, log in to the Universal Management Host system interface, then click **Register** in the top-right corner. The License Management page displays, enter the word "ANALYZER" in the **Serial Number** field and leave the **Authentication Code** fields blank. Enter a name into the **Friendly Name** field, then click **Submit**. For complete instructions, refer to the latest *Analyzer Getting Started Guide* for your deployment.

Step 8 Click Next.

Step 9 The final installer screen contains the path of the installation folder, and warns you that the Universal Management Suite Web page is launched next. Click **Done**.

In the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer login page, enter the same credentials for **User** and **Password** that you had in your earlier version prior to the upgrade.

Upgrading from Analyzer to GMS

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer installations have the option of upgrading to Dell SonicWALL GMS without reinstalling. You can start a 30-day Free Trial of Dell SonicWALL GMS by clicking a button or link in either the Analyzer or Universal Management Host interface and following a simple procedure. When you are ready to finalize the upgrade, your Dell SonicWALL reseller can provide you with the license key for a seamless transition to Dell SonicWALL GMS.

When five or more registered devices are connected to Dell SonicWALL Analyzer reporting, **Try GMS Free - 30 Days** appears next to the tabs at the top of the Analyzer management interface.

Dashboard	Firewall	SRA	CDP	Console	Try GMS Free 30 Days
-----------	----------	-----	-----	---------	-------------------------

You can also start the Free Trial by clicking **Manage Licenses** on the **System > Licenses** page of the Universal Management Host interface, and then clicking **Try**.

🔻 🕎 System	1 · M					
Status	License Management					
Licenses					Serial Numb	er: 00401022FDDC
Administration	Security Service	Status	Free Trial	Manage Service	Count	Expiration
Settings	Global Management System	Not Licensed	Try	<u>Upgrade</u>		
Diagnostics	ViewPoint	Licensed			Unlimited	
🕨 🥞 Deployment						
					Return to	License Summary

For details on enabling the Dell SonicWALL GMS Free Trial and purchasing the Dell SonicWALL GMS upgrade license, see the following sections:

- Enabling the GMS Free Trial from Analyzer on page 215
- Enabling the GMS Free Trial from the UMH Interface on page 217
- Completing the Free Trial Upgrade on page 218
- Configuring Appliances for GMS Management on page 221
- Purchasing a SonicWALL GMS Upgrade on page 222

Enabling the GMS Free Trial from Analyzer

When five or more devices are connected to Dell SonicWALL Analyzer reporting, **Try GMS Free - 30 Days** appears next to the tabs at the top of the Analyzer management interface.

To find out how many devices your Dell SonicWALL Analyzer installation is handling, log in to MySonicWALL and navigate to the **My Products** page. Click the link for your Dell SonicWALL Analyzer installation to get to the **Service Management** page, and scroll to the bottom. See the list of appliances under **Associated Products**.

To enable the 30-day Dell SonicWALL GMS Free Trial from the Analyzer management interface, complete the following steps:

Step 1 In the Analyzer management interface, click **Try GMS Free - 30 Days** next to the tabs at the top of the page.



Step 2 The Analyzer Upgrade Tool launches and guides you through the process of installing the Free Trial or Upgrade. The tool displays the Upgrade Requirements – Licensing screen. Before migrating to GMS, ensure that all appliances under Analyzer reporting are registered to the same MySonicWALL account. Follow the steps provided in the screen, and then click Proceed.

6					
he sar is the	int to GMS 5.1 upgrade (GMS Free Trial or Full License), requires that all appliances in your ViewPoint software be registered to the MySonitWALL account. If appliances are not migrated prior to this upgrade, GMS will be missing essential functionality sup ability to license services and perform firmware upgrades. If this is the case, places abort the upgrade and consolidate all the ces in your ViewPoint software into the same MySonicWALL account following the steps below. Otherwise, click "Proceed" to re.				
1.	Gather the MySonicWALL login info for the appliance and log into the account.				
2.	After logging into MySonicWALL, navigate to the "My Products" screen and locate the appliance.				
	Important: Make note of the serial number and authentication code for future reference,				
3.	Locate the "delete" button option in the "Service Management" screen in the specific MySonicWALL account and select it.				
4.	Click on "Confirm Deletion" prompt.				
5.	This appliance is now ready for migration to GMS 5.1.				
	Repeat steps 1 thru 4 for the rest of the appliances under ViewPoint as needed.				

Step 3 The Upgrade Requirements – System screen displays the recommended operating system, database, and hardware system requirements. Click **Proceed**.

Upgrade Requirements - System						
ase check the recommended system requirements below to make sure your system is qualified for upgrading to be an all-in-one Gf stem. Click "Proceed" to start the upgrade procedure.						
Recommended System Re	quirements					
Operating System	Microsoft@ Environment: Windows 2000 Server (SP4), Windows 2000 Professional (SP4), Windows XP Professional (SP2), Windows 2003 Server (SP2)					
Database	Microsoft@ Environment: Microsoft SQL Server 2000 (SP4) and Microsoft SQL Server 2005 (SP2) on either Windows 2000 Server (SP4) or 2003 Server (SP1)					
Hardware	x86 Environment: Minimum 3 GHz processor dual-core CPU Intel processor, 2 GB RAM, and 300 GB disk space					
Current System Informatio	'n					
Operating System	Windows XP (x86-5.1)					
CPU	2.327 GHz					
RAM	2.008 GB					
	Proceed Cancel					

Step 4 The Analyzer Upgrade Tool displays the login screen for MySonicWALL. Enter your MySonicWALL credentials and click **Submit**.

	ViewPoint Upgrade Tool
tep 1. Upgrade the Licen	nse
Jse the license upgrade scre	een provided below to upgrade the license from Viewpoint to GMS
mySonicWALL.com Login	'n
managing all your SonicWAL use interface to manage ser mySonicWALL please visit th	stop resource for registering all your SonicWALL Internet Security Appliances and L security service upgrades and changes. mySonicWALL provides you with an easy to rivices and upgrades for multiple SonicWALL appliances. For more information on ne <u>FAQ</u> . If you do not have a mySonicWall account, please click <u>here</u> to create one. mySonicWALL.com username (or email address) and password below:
Email Address/User Name:	
Email Address/User Name: Password:	
	Submit

Step 5 In the next Analyzer Upgrade Tool page, click **Try** in the **Free Trial** column for Global Management System.

Viewpoint Upgrade Tool					
i tep 1. Upgrade the License Use the license upgrade screen provided below to upgrade the license from Viewpoint to GMS					
Use the license upgrade screen provided below to upgrade the license from Viewpoint to GMS Security Service Status Free Trial Manage Service Count Expiration					
Global Management System ViewPoint	Not Licensed Licensed	<u>Try</u>	<u>Upgrade</u>	Unlimited	

Step 6 From this point, the upgrade process continues with the same steps for access from either the Analyzer interface or the Universal Management Host interface. To continue the procedure, complete the steps in Completing the Free Trial Upgrade on page 218.

Enabling the GMS Free Trial from the UMH Interface

To enable the 30-day Free Trial of Dell SonicWALL GMS from the Universal Management Host interface on your Dell SonicWALL Analyzer system, complete the following steps:

Step 1 In the Universal Management Host interface, navigate to the System > Licenses page and click Manage Licenses.

• 5	System Status	License Management			
	Licenses				Serial Number: 00401022FDDC
	Administration	Security Service	Status	Count	Expiration
	Settings	Global Management System	Not Licensed	11.15.25.4	
F (Diagnostics Deployment	ViewPoint	Licensed	Unlimited	
			Manage License:	; Refresh L	icenses Upload Licenses

Step 2 If you are not already logged into MySonicWALL, the MySonicWALL login screen is displayed. Enter your MySonicWALL credentials in the appropriate fields and log in. Step 3 On the next page, click Try in the Free Trial column for Global Management System.

🔻 💻 System	License Management					
Status Licenses					Serial Numbe	er: 00401022FDDC
Administration	Security Service	Status	Free Trial	Manage Service	Count	Expiration
Settings Diagnostics	Global Management System ViewPoint	Not Licensed Licensed	<u>Iry</u>	<u>Upgrade</u>	Unlimited	
					Return to	License Summary

Step 4 From this point, the upgrade process continues with the same steps for access from either the Analyzer interface or the Universal Management Host interface. To continue the procedure, complete the steps in Completing the Free Trial Upgrade on page 218.

Completing the Free Trial Upgrade

This procedure provides the common upgrading steps for access from either the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer interface or the Universal Management Host interface. To get to this point in the process, follow the steps described in one of the two preceding sections:

- Enabling the GMS Free Trial from Analyzer on page 215
- Enabling the GMS Free Trial from the UMH Interface on page 217

To continue the upgrade, complete the following steps:

Step 1 In the Analyzer Upgrade Tool page, click **Continue**.

	Viewpoint Upgrade Tool
Step 1. Upgrade the License	
Use the license upgrade screen provided	below to upgrade the license from Viewpoint to GMS
Global Management System Free 1	rial
Thank you for your interest in Global Mar	agement System.
If you choose to purchase Global Manag	ement System subscription, you may do so at any time during or after the trial.
Continue	Cancel

Step 2 The next screen provides a summary of GMS and Analyzer status. Verify that the Try link for the Free Trial is gone and only the Upgrade link remains. The Expiration column displays the expiration date of your Free Trial. You can click Upgrade at any time during the Free Trial to purchase the Dell SonicWALL GMS upgrade. Click Proceed.

Viewpoint Upgrade Tool							
Step 1. Upgrade the License Below is the summary of the upg	aded licenses.	Please click the	"Proceed" button to co	ntinue to the n	ext step		
Security Service	Status	Free Trial	Manage Service	Count	Expiration		
Global Management System	Free Trial		<u>Upgrade</u>	15	25 Jul 2009		
ViewPoint	Licensed			Unlimited			
viewPoint	Licensed			Uniimited			
		F	Proceed				

Step 3 In the next Analyzer Upgrade Tool page, you begin the configuration for GMS in step 2 of the upgrade process. This page displays two sections:

Automatic Configuration – Contains a list of Dell SonicWALL firewall or CSM appliances in your Analyzer installation. These appliances are automatically configured for GMS management.

Manual Configuration – Contains a list of Dell SonicWALL Aventail, SSL-VPN, or CDP appliances in your Analyzer installation. You must manually configure these appliances for GMS management. See Configuring Appliances for GMS Management on page 221 for detailed instructions on enabling GMS management on these appliances.

When ready, click Proceed .	When	ready,	click	Proceed.
------------------------------------	------	--------	-------	----------

utomatic Configuratior	1
	UTM appliances currently in the system. These ically configured to support GMS .
Appliance Name	Appliance Serial Number
NSA 240	0017C5269510
NSA 5500	0017C51C655C
_	nnul ITM anniances currently in the system. These
ollowing list shows all the ppliances need manual co	non-UTM appliances currently in the system. These nfiguration to support GMS . Appliance. Serial

Step 4 When the configuration finishes, the Analyzer Upgrade Tool displays the completion dialog box. Click **Close** to log out of the console and restart the system.

Viewpoint Upgrade Tool	
You have complete the upgrade procedure.	
please click "Close" button to logout the console and reboot the box	
close	
	- SONICWALL

Step 5 The GMS login page appears and requests that you reboot the system. Reboot the system. If a reboot is not done, you might encounter problems with the correct IP Address appearing.



Step 6 After rebooting, log in with your Analyzer credentials.

When you log in, you should see a button displaying the number of days left in your Free Trial at the top of the page.

Step 7 On the **System > Status** page for connected appliances, you can view the log entries for task synchronization and automatic addressing mode, related to the GMS configuration.

🖬 🌌 🔇 🖓	E	NSA 240 :: Status		GMS Free Trial 31 Days Lef
GlobalView (LocalDomain) NSA 240 NSA 5500	Policies Reports	Status Information for Unit Node: N	5A 240	
	A CONTRACTOR OF	Firewall		
	Status	Firewall Model	SonicWALL NSA 240 UNL NODE	
	Time	Serial Number	0017C5269510	
	Licensed Nodes	Domain	LocalDomain	
		Registration Code	3PXVMJV2	
	Administrator	Firmware Version CPLI	SonicOS Enhanced 5.2.0.1-210 - English	
	Tools	Hardware Failover	2 × 500 MHz Mips64 Octeon Processor Disabled	
	Info	Number of LAN IPs allowed	Unlimited	
		Number of LAN IFS allowed	orminiced	
	Settings	Network		
	Schedules	Interfaces	X0, X1, X2, X3, X4, X5, X6	
	Management	Incendues	X7, X8, M0	
	SNMP	Zones	LAN, WAN, DMZ, VPN, MULTICAST, WLAN, S	SLVPN
		DHCP Server	Enabled	
	CA Certificates	brid borror		
	Local Certificates	Management		
	Network	Firewall Status	Up since Wed Jun 24 18:08:04 PDT 2009	Ŷ
	▶ Firewall	Unit added to SonicWALL GMS on	Jun 24, 2009 17:48:00 PDT	
	▶ Log	Management Mode	HTTPS [10.0.94.100 : 443] (Manual)	
		Primary Agent	10.0.92.111 (Active)	
	Diagnostics	Standby Agent	None	
	Website Blocking	Tasks Pending	No	
	▶ DHCP	Last Log Entry SA Configuration Information	Successful execution of task: Synchronize un	
	▶ Users	Defined SAs	2	
	> VPN	Enabled SAs	None	

Configuring Appliances for GMS Management

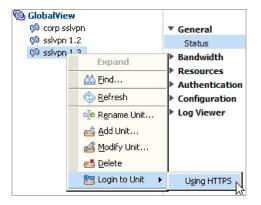
To manually configure the appliances listed in the Manual Configuration section of the Analyzer Upgrade Tool page (see Step 3 on page 219), complete the following steps for each appliance:

- Step 1 In the GMS management interface, click the tab at the top of the page that corresponds to the type of appliance, such as SSL-VPN or CDP.
- Step 2 In the left pane, right-click one of the listed appliances and select Modify Unit.
- Step 3 In the Modify Unit screen in the right pane, copy the appliance IP address in the **Managed** Address section to your clipboard, or make a note of it.

ei ei 🐵 🔇 🔛	🕌 Modify Unit		×
🔁 MyReportsView (LocalDo	Unit Name:	Eng	
Eng Corp	Serial Number:	0006B1278F48	
🖆 Eng Test	Managed Address:	Determine automatically Specify manually: 10.128.1.2 Aventail SSL-VPN appliance	
	Login Name:	admin	
	Password:	жылысыны	
	Management Mode:	Using Existing Tunnel or LAN	
		CUsing HTTPS	
	HTTPS Port:	443	
	SA Encryption Key:		22
	SA Authentication Key:		
	Agent IP Address:	192.168.252.12	Ŧ
	Standby Agent IP;	None	
4		≪ OK XCancel	

Step 4 Click Cancel.

Step 5 In the left pane, right-click the same appliance and select Login to Unit > Using HTTPS.





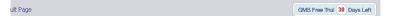
Step 6 In the appliance management interface, navigate to the System > Administration page.

- Step 7 Under GMS Settings, select Enable GMS Management, or verify that it is selected.
- Step 8 In the GMS Host Name or IP Address field, paste or type the appliance IP address that you obtained from the Modify Unit screen in Step 3
- Step 9 Click Accept at the top of the appliance interface screen.
- Step 10 Click Logout in the top right corner of the appliance interface screen.
- **Step 11** Repeat these steps for each appliance listed in the Manual Configuration section of the Analyzer Upgrade Tool page.

Purchasing a SonicWALL GMS Upgrade

You can purchase an upgrade to Dell SonicWALL GMS at any time during the 30-day Free Trial. To purchase the SonicWALL GMS license, complete the following steps:

Step 1 In the GMS interface, click GMS Free Trial X Days Left, where X is the number of days left in the Free Trial.



Step 2 In the Buy GMS page, click I want to upgrade to GMS now.

	GMS Free Trial 30 Days Left	User: a
Buy GMS		
Free Trial / Upgrade options Use the following options to buy a GMS license or to end the GMS free trial		
I want to upgrade to GMS now		
 Second Article Science (Second Second S		
	SONICA	VALL
	Johnen	MLL

Step 3 The Console > Licenses > Product Licenses page is displayed. Click Manage Licenses.

	Product Licenses		GMS F	ree Trial 30 Days Left	User: admin@Loc	alDomain Administra		
▶ User Settings ▶ Log ▶ Tasks	License Summary Lost SonicWALL Registration Site contact: Apr 02 2009 03:14PM Serial Number: 00401022PD0							
 Management Reports Diagnostics Events 	Security Service	Status	Count	Expiration				
	Global Management System ViewPoint	Free Trial Licensed	15 Unlimited	02 May 2009				
* Licenses								
Product Licenses			Manage Licenses	Refresh Licenses U	Upload Licenses			
Activation Codes Deployments ► Help			[manage eventse.]	- Server and the server s				

Step 4 In the next page, in the Manage Service column for Global Management System, click Upgrade.

roduct Licenses			GMS F	iree Trial 30 Days	Left User: admin@Loo
License Summary					
Last SonicWALL Registration Site con	tact: Apr 02 2009 03	14PM			Serial Numbe
Security Service	Status	Free Trial	Manage Service	Count	Expiration
Global Management System	Free Trial		Upgrade	15	02 May 2009
ViewPoint	Licensed			Unlimited	
				Re	turn to License Summary

Step 5 The next page has Serial Number and Authentication Code fields for GMS. You must contact your Dell SonicWALL reseller to complete the purchase and obtain the 12-character serial number and authentication code. Type in the values to the Serial Number and Authentication Code fields.

License Summary						
Last SonicWALL Registrat	ion Site contact: Apr 02 2009 03:14PM Serial Number:					
Enter your new 12 character Software Serial Number and Authentication Code						
Serial Number:						
Authentication Code:	- What is this?					
Friendly Name:						
GMS upgrade keys:						
	(Required if current Viewpoint installation is larger than retail upgrade					
	Submit					

- **Step 6** Enter a descriptive name for the GMS installation into the **Friendly Name** field. This name appears in your MySonicWALL account.
- Step 7 If your Analyzer installation currently handles more than 10 appliances, when you upgrade to GMS you must purchase additional GMS license(s) to manage the extra appliances. The standard "10-node" GMS license provided with the Free Trial supports up to 10 managed appliances. Enter the license keys for any additional GMS licenses into the GMS upgrade keys text box, one key per line.
- Step 8 Click Submit. The License page is displayed, showing that GMS is now licensed.

Miscellaneous Procedures and Tips

This section contains miscellaneous Global Management System procedures and troubleshooting tips.

Miscellaneous Procedures

This section contains information on procedures you might do. Select from the following:

- It is highly recommended that you regularly back up the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer data. For more information, see Backing up Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Data on page 224.
- Dell SonicWALL Analyzer requires Mixed Mode authentication when using SQL Server 2000. To change the authentication mode, see Changing the SQL Server Authentication Mode on page 224.
- If you are reinstalling Dell SonicWALL Analyzer, preserving the previous configuration settings can save a lot of time. To reinstall Dell SonicWALL Analyzer using an existing Dell SonicWALL Analyzer database, see Reinstalling Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Using an Existing Database on page 225.
- If you need to uninstall Dell SonicWALL Analyzer from a server, it is important to do it correctly. To uninstall Dell SonicWALL Analyzer, see Uninstalling SonicWALL Universal Management Suite and Its Database on page 225.

Backing up Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Data

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer stores its configuration data in the SGMSDB database. It is important to back up this database and the individual Dell SonicWALL Analyzer databases (sgmsvp_yyy_mm_dd) on a regular basis.

The **Console > Management > Database Maintenance** page provides the necessary support for backing up and restoring the MySQL database that is bundled with SonicWALL UMS.

If you are using SQL Server, this can be accomplished by backing up the entire SQL Server using the database backup tool. When using this tool, there is no need to stop the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer services for database backup. However, make sure that the backup occurs when Dell SonicWALL Analyzer activity is the lowest and that the backup operation schedule does not clash with the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer scheduler.

Note It is also recommended to regularly back up the entire contents of the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer directory, the sgmsConfig.xml file.

Changing the SQL Server Authentication Mode

Dell SonicWALL Analyzer requires the Mixed Mode authentication mode. To change the authentication mode from Windows Mode to Mixed Mode, follow these steps:

- Step 1 Start the Microsoft SQL Server Enterprise Manager.
- Step 2 Right-click the appropriate SQL Server Group and select **Properties** from the pop-up menu.
- Step 3 Click the Security tab.
- Step 4 Change the Authentication mode from Windows only to SQL Server and Windows.
- Step 5 Click OK.

Reinstalling Dell SonicWALL Analyzer Using an Existing Database

If you need to reinstall Dell SonicWALL Analyzer, but want to preserve the settings in an existing Dell SonicWALL Analyzer database, follow these steps:

- Step 1 Install a new database, using the same username and password that you used for the existing Dell SonicWALL Analyzer database.
- **Step 2** Install Dell SonicWALL Analyzer using this new database.
- Step 3 Stop all Dell SonicWALL Analyzer services.
- **Step 4** Open the sgmsConfig.xml and web.xml files with a text editor. Change the values for the dbhost and dburl parameters to match the existing Dell SonicWALL Analyzer database.
- Step 5 Restart the Dell SonicWALL Analyzer services.
- Step 6 Uninstall the new database.

Uninstalling SonicWALL Universal Management Suite and Its Database

This section describes how to uninstall SonicWALL Universal Management Suite and its components. Select from the following:

- To uninstall SonicWALL Universal Management Suite on the Windows platform, see Windows on page 225.
- To uninstall SonicWALL Universal Management Suite databases from Microsoft SQL Server 2000, see MS SQL Server 2000 on page 225.

Windows

To uninstall SonicWALL Universal Management Suite from a Windows system, follow these steps:

- Step 1 Click Start, point to Settings, and click Control Panel.
- Step 2 Double-click Add/Remove Programs. The Add/Remove Programs Properties window displays.
- Step 3 Select SonicWALL Universal Management Suite and click Change/Remove. The SonicWALL Universal Management Suite Uninstall program starts.
- Step 4 Follow the on-screen prompts.
- Step 5 Restart the system. SonicWALL Universal Management Suite is uninstalled.

MS SQL Server 2000

To uninstall or remove the SonicWALL Universal Management Suite databases in the MS SQL Server 2000, you can execute the following DOS command from any SonicWALL Universal Management Suite server:

osql -U username -P password -S dbHost_IP -q "drop database SGMSDB"

osql -U username -P password -S dbHost_IP -q "drop database sgmsvp_yyyy_mm_dd"

Or you can use the MS SQL Server's Enterprise Manager and delete the SGMSDB and sgmsvp_ databases.

Appendix B License Agreements

You can view the End User License Agreement and all Third-Party Product Licenses in the **Console > Help > About** screen of the Analyzer user Interface.

This appendix details the following licensing agreements:

- End User Software License Agreement on page 227
- Apache Licensing Agreement on page 234

End User Software License Agreement

PLEASE READ THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE SONICWALL PRODUCT. BY INSTALLING OR USING THE SONICWALL PRODUCT, YOU (AS THE CUSTOMER, OR IF NOT THE CUSTOMER, AS A REPRESENTATIVE/AGENT AUTHORIZED TO BIND THE CUSTOMER) INDICATE ACCEPTANCE OF AND AGREE TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT FOR AND ON BEHALF OF THE CUSTOMER. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT, THEN DO NOT USE THE PRODUCT AND RETURN IT TO THE PLACE OF PURCHASE WITH PROOF OF PURCHASE WITHIN THIRTY (30) DAYS OF PURCHASE FOR A REFUND. IF YOU DO PROCEED TO INSTALL OR USE THE SONICWALL PRODUCT, YOU WILL HAVE INDICATED ACCEPTANCE AND AGREEMENT WITH THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS HEREIN. NOTWITHSTANDING THE FOREGOING, THIS AGREEMENT SHALL NOT SUPERSEDE ANY OTHER SIGNED AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU AND SONICWALL THAT EXPRESSLY GOVERNS USE OF THE SONICWALL PRODUCT. IN INSTANCES WHERE YOU PURCHASE THROUGH A RESELLER OR DISTRIBUTOR, FINAL PRICES AND TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF SALE, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY TERMS REGARDING PAYMENT OR RETURNS, WILL BE AS AGREED BETWEEN YOU AND THE THIRD-PARTY FROM WHICH YOU MAKE SUCH PURCHASES; HOWEVER, THE TERMS SET FORTH HEREIN REGARDING YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE REMAIN APPLICABLE.

"Product" means the SonicWALL labeled hardware and related documentation ("Hardware") and/or proprietary SonicWALL labeled software, firmware and related documentation ("Software") purchased by you ("Customer" or "you") either directly from SonicWALL or a Reseller. "Services" means the Support Services described as follows and any other services provided with or for the Products directly by SonicWALL or its agents. "Reseller" shall mean those entities to which SonicWALL or SonicWALL's authorized distributors distribute the Products for resale to end users. Except as otherwise agreed upon by the parties, this Agreement will also cover any updates and upgrades to the Products provided to Customer by SonicWALL directly or through a Reseller (except as may be otherwise indicated, such updates and upgrades shall be deemed Products).

1. LICENSE(S) AND RESTRICTIONS

a. Licenses—Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, SonicWALL grants to Customer, and Customer accepts from SonicWALL, a nonexclusive, non-transferable (except as otherwise set forth herein) and non-sublicensable license ("License") to: (i) execute and use the Software on the Hardware with which the Software is provided (pre-installed) in accordance with the applicable Documentation; and, (ii) for Software provided in standalone form (without Hardware), install, execute and use the Software device(s) on which it is intended to be used in accordance with the applicable Documentation and the License purchased. If Customer purchased multiple copies of standalone Software, Customer's License to such standalone Software includes the right to install, use and execute up to the number of copies of Software Licenses purchased.

In addition, the License includes the right to (x) make a reasonable number of additional copies of the Software to be used solely for non-productive archival purposes, and (y) make and use copies of the end user documentation for Hardware and/or Software provided with the Products ("Documentation") as reasonably necessary to support Customer's authorized users in their use of the Products.

- b. License Limitations—Order acknowledgments, Documentation and/or the particular type of the Products/Licenses purchased by Customer may specify limits on Customer's use of the Software, and which limits apply to the License(s) granted hereunder for such Software. Such limits may consist of limiting the number of copies of the Software, the term of the License, or the number or amount of nodes, storage space, sessions, calls, users, subscribers, clusters, devices, ports, bandwidth, throughput or other elements, and/or require the purchase of separate Licenses to use or obtain particular features, functionalities, services, applications or other items. Use of the Software shall be subject to all such limitations.
- c. For Customer's Internal Business—Each License shall be used by Customer solely to manage its own internal business operations as well as the business operations of its Affiliates. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if Customer is in the regular business of providing firewall, VPN or security management for a fee to entities that are not its Affiliates ("MSP Customers"), Customer may use the Products for its MSP Customers provided that either (i) Customer, and not MSP Customers, maintain control and possession of the Products, and (ii) MSP Customers do not use the Software. If MSP Customers have possession and/or control of Products in whole or in part, this Agreement must be provided to MSP Customers and they must agree that their use of the Products is subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Customer will not provide, make available to, or permit use of the Software in whole or in part by, any third-party, including MSP Customers and contractors, without SonicWall's prior written consent, unless such use by the third-party is solely on Customer's behalf, is strictly in compliance with the terms and conditions of this Agreement, and Customer is liable for any breach of this Agreement by such third-party. Customer agrees to indemnify and hold SonicWALL harmless from and against any claims by MSP Customers against SonicWALL relating to the Products and/or Customer's services for MSP Customers. "Affiliate" means any legal entity controlled by a party to this Agreement, but only for so long as such control relationship exists.
- d. Evaluation License—If the Software is provided by SonicWALL or a Reseller at no charge for evaluation purposes, then Section 1(a) above shall not apply to such Software and instead Customer is granted a non-production License to use such Software and the associated documentation solely for Customer's own internal evaluation purposes for an evaluation period of up to thirty (30) days from the date of

delivery of the Software, plus any extensions granted by SonicWALL in writing (the "Evaluation Period"). There is no fee for Customer's use of the Software for nonproduction evaluation purposes during the Evaluation Period, however, Customer is responsible for any applicable shipping charges or taxes which may be incurred, and any fees which may be associated with usage beyond the scope permitted herein. NOTWITHSTANDING ANYTHING OTHERWISE SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, CUSTOMER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT EVALUATION SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND THAT SONICWALL DOES NOT PROVIDE A WARRANTY OR MAINTENANCE SERVICES FOR EVALUATION LICENSES, AND SONICWALL BEARS NO LIABILITY FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM USE (OR ATTEMPTED USE) OF THE EVALUATION SOFTWARE THROUGH AND AFTER THE EVALUATION PERIOD AND HAS NO DUTY TO PROVIDE SUPPORT TO CUSTOMER.

- e. Restrictions—Customer may not (i) modify, translate, localize, adapt, rent, lease, loan, create or prepare derivative works of, or create a patent based on the Software or any part thereof, (ii) make copies except as expressly authorized under this Agreement, (iii) copy the Software onto any public or distributed network, (iv) modify or resell the Software, use the Software in connection with the operation of any nuclear facilities, or use for purposes which are competitive to SonicWALL, or (v) except as expressly authorized in Section 2(c) above, operate the Software for use in any time-sharing, outsourcing, service bureau or application service provider type environment. Unless and except to the extent authorized in the applicable Documentation, Software provided with and/or as the Product, in part or whole, is licensed for use only in accordance with the Documentation as part of the Product, and Software components making up a Product may not be separated from, nor used on a separate or standalone basis from the Product. Each permitted copy of the Software and Documentation made by Customer hereunder must contain all titles, trademarks, copyrights and restricted rights notices as in the original. Customer understands and agrees that the Products may work in conjunction with third-party products and Customer agrees to be responsible for ensuring that it is properly licensed to use such third-party products. Any Software provided in object code form is licensed hereunder only in object code form. Except to the extent allowed by applicable law if located in the European Union, and then only with prior written notice to SonicWALL, Customer shall not disassemble, decompile or reverse engineer the Software in whole or in part or authorize others to do so. Customer agrees not to use the Software to perform comparisons or other "benchmarking" activities, either alone or in connection with any other software or service, without SonicWALL's written permission; or publish any such performance information or comparisons.
- f. Third-Party Software—There may be certain third-party owned software provided along with, or incorporated within, the Products ("Third-Party Software"). Except as set forth in the paragraphs that follow, such Third-Party Software shall be considered Software governed by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. However, some Products may contain other Third-Party Software that is provided with a separate license agreement, in which case such Third-Party Software will be governed exclusively by such separate license agreement ("Third-Party License") and not this Agreement. Any such Third-Party Software that is governed by a Third-Party License, and not this Agreement, will be identified on the applicable Product page on SonicWALL's website and/or in a file provided with the Product. Except as SonicWALL may otherwise inform Customer in writing, the Third-Party License gives Customer at least the license rights granted above, and may provide additional license rights as to the Third-Party Software, but only with respect to the particular Third-Party Software to which the Third-Party License applies. SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE UNDER A THIRD-PARTY LICENSE IS PROVIDED WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY FROM

SONICWALL AND ITS SUPPLIERS, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. Notwithstanding the foregoing, SonicWALL shall honor its warranty, maintenance and support obligations in respect to the SonicWALL Products regardless of whether the warranty, maintenance or support issue is caused in whole or in part by the Third-Party Software provided by SonicWALL with the Product.

- g. Updates/Upgrades—If Customer purchases or otherwise is eligible to receive a Software update or upgrade, you must be properly licensed to use the Product identified by SonicWALL as being eligible for the update/upgrade in order to install and use the Software update/upgrade. A Software update/ upgrade replaces and/or supplements the Software Product that formed the basis for your eligibility for the update/upgrade, and does not provide you an additional License (copy) of the Software to use separately from the Software Product to be updated/upgraded. You may use the resulting updated/upgraded Product only in accordance with the terms of this Agreement.
- h. Activation Keys May Expire—Certain Products, including Security Services that provide regular ongoing updates for Software (such as, Security Service consisting of anti-virus signature updates), may come with an activation key or license key (a key that must be entered to activate the Product, "Activation Key"). If the Activation Key for a Product is not activated within five (5) years from the date of issuance by SonicWALL, such Activation Key(s) may expire and no longer activate the Product. Products that come with an expiring Activation Key will operate for the contracted term of the License (or purchased Security Service), so long as the Activation Key is activated within five (5) years from SonicWALL's date of issuance.

2. OWNERSHIP

SonicWALL and its licensors are the sole and exclusive owners of the Software, and all underlying intellectual property rights in the Hardware. All rights not expressly granted to Customer are reserved by SonicWALL and its licensors.

3. TERMINATION OF LICENSE(S)

All licenses to the Software hereunder shall terminate if Customer fails to comply with any of the provisions of this Agreement and does not remedy such breach within thirty (30) days after receiving written notice from SonicWALL. Customer agrees upon termination to immediately cease using the Software and to destroy all copies of the Software which may have been provided or created hereunder.

4. SUPPORT SERVICES

SonicWALL's current Support Service offerings ("Support Services") and the terms and conditions applicable to such Support Services are set forth in SonicWALL's Support Services Terms located http://www.sonicwall.com/us/support/Services.html and are incorporated herein by reference. Support Services may require an additional fee. Unless otherwise agreed to in writing, SonicWALL's Support Services are subject to SonicWALL's Support Services Terms which are in effect at the time the Support Services are purchased by Customer, and these terms and conditions will be incorporated herein by reference at that time. SonicWALL reserves the right to change the Support Services Terms from time to time by posting such changes on its website, which shall apply to any Support Services purchased on or after the date of such posting.

5. SONICWALL WARRANTY

a. Warranty—SonicWALL warrants to Customer (original purchaser Customer only) that for the applicable warranty period ("Warranty Period") the Hardware will be free from any material defects in materials or workmanship and the Software, if any, will substantially conform to the Documentation applicable to the Software and the License purchased ("Limited Warranty"). Except as may indicated otherwise in writing by

SonicWALL, the Warranty Period for Hardware is one year from the date of registration of the Hardware Product (or if sooner, seven days after initial delivery of the Hardware Product to Customer), and the applicable warranty period for Software is ninety days from the date of registration of the Software Product (or if sooner, seven days after initial delivery/download) of the Software Product to/by Customer. SonicWALL does not warrant that use of the Product(s) will be uninterrupted or error free nor that SonicWALL will correct all errors. The Limited Warranty shall not apply to any non-conformance (i) that SonicWALL cannot recreate after exercising commercially reasonable efforts to attempt to do so; (ii) caused by misuse of the Product or by using the Product in a manner that is inconsistent with this Agreement or the Documentation; (iii) arising from the modification of the Products by anyone other than SonicWALL; or (iv) caused by any problem or error in third-party software or hardware not provided by SonicWALL with the Product regardless of whether or not the SonicWALL Product is designed to operate with such third-party software or hardware. SonicWALL's sole obligation and Customer's sole and exclusive remedy under any express or implied warranties hereunder shall be for SonicWALL to use commercially reasonable efforts to provide error corrections and/or, if applicable, repair or replace parts in accordance with SonicWALL's Support Services Terms. Customer shall have no rights or remedies under this Limited Warranty unless SonicWALL receives Customer's detailed written warranty claim within the applicable warranty period.

b. Disclaimer—EXCEPT FOR THE EXPRESS WARRANTIES SET FORTH ABOVE, TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW SONICWALL HEREBY DISCLAIMS ON BEHALF OF ITSELF, ITS SUPPLIERS, DISTRIBUTORS AND RESELLERS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS, STATUTORY AND IMPLIED, APPLICABLE TO THE PRODUCTS, SERVICES AND/OR THE SUBJECT MATTER OF THIS AGREEMENT, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

6. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

The Products are not designed, manufactured, authorized or warranted to be suitable for use in any system where a failure of such system could result in a situation that threatens the safety of human life, including without limitation any such medical, life support, aviation or nuclear applications. Any such use and subsequent liabilities that may arise from such use are totally the responsibility of Customer, and all liability of SonicWALL, whether in contract, tort (including without limitation negligence) or otherwise in relation to the same is excluded. Customer shall be responsible for mirroring its data, for backing it up frequently and regularly, and for taking all reasonable precautions to prevent data loss or corruption. SonicWALL shall not be responsible for any system downtime, loss or corruption of data or loss of production. NOTWITHSTANDING ANYTHING ELSE IN THIS AGREEMENT OR OTHERWISE, TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL SONICWALL, ITS SUPPLIERS, DISTRIBUTORS OR RESELLERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, LOST OR CORRUPTED DATA, LOST PROFITS OR SAVINGS, LOSS OF BUSINESS, REPUTATION, GOODWILL OR OTHER ECONOMIC LOSS OR COSTS OF PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THIS AGREEMENT, THE PRODUCTS OR THE SERVICES, WHETHER OR NOT BASED ON TORT, CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY OR ANY OTHER LEGAL THEORY AND WHETHER OR NOT SONICWALL HAS BEEN ADVISED OR KNEW OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, SONICWALL'S MAXIMUM LIABILITY TO CUSTOMER ARISING FROM OR RELATING TO THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNTS RECEIVED BY SONICWALL FOR THE PRODUCTS AND THE SERVICES PURCHASED BY CUSTOMER, PROVIDED THAT WHERE ANY CLAIM AGAINST SONICWALL RELATES TO PARTICULAR PRODUCTS AND/OR SERVICES, SONICWALL'S MAXIMUM

LIABILITY SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AGGREGATE AMOUNT RECEIVED BY SONICWALL IN RESPECT OF THE PRODUCTS AND/OR SERVICES PURCHASED BY CUSTOMER AFFECTED BY THE MATTER GIVING RISE TO THE CLAIM. (FOR MAINTENANCE SERVICES OR A PRODUCT SUBJECT TO RECURRING FEES, THE LIABILITY SHALL NOT EXCEED THE AMOUNT RECEIVED BY SONICWALL FOR SUCH MAINTENANCE SERVICE OR PRODUCT PURCHASED BY CUSTOMER DURING THE TWELVE (12) MONTHS PRECEDING THE CLAIM).

CUSTOMER EXPRESSLY AGREES TO THE ALLOCATION OF LIABILITY SET FORTH IN THIS SECTION, AND ACKNOWLEDGES THAT WITHOUT ITS AGREEMENT TO THESE LIMITATIONS, THE PRICES CHARGED FOR THE PRODUCTS AND SERVICES WOULD BE HIGHER.

7. GOVERNMENT RESTRICTIONS

Customer agrees that the Products provided under this Agreement, which may include technology and encryption, are subject to the customs and export control laws and regulations of the United States, may be rendered or performed either in the U.S., in countries outside the U.S., or outside of the borders of the country in which Customer or Customer's system is located, and may also be subject to the customs and export laws and regulations of the country in which the Products are rendered or received. Customer agrees to abide by those laws and regulations. Customer agrees that it will not export or re-export the Products without SonicWALL's prior written consent, and then only in compliance with all requirements of applicable law, including but not limited to U.S. export control regulations. Customer has the responsibility to obtain any required licenses to export, re-export or import the Products. Customer shall defend, indemnify and hold SonicWALL and its suppliers harmless from any claims arising out of Customer's violation of any export control laws relating to any exporting of the Products. By accepting this Agreement and receiving the Products, Customer confirms that it and its employees and agents who may access the Products are not listed on any governmental export exclusion lists and will not export or re-export the Products to any country embargoed by the U.S. or to any specially denied national (SDN) or denied entity identified by the U.S. Applicable export restrictions and exclusions are available at the official web site of the U.S. Department of Commerce Bureau of Industry and Security (www.bis.doc.gov). For purchase by U.S. governmental entities, the technical data and computer software in the Products are commercial technical data and commercial computer software as subject to FAR Sections 12.211, 12.212, 27.405-3 and DFARS Section 227.7202. The rights to use the Products and the underlying commercial technical data and computer software is limited to those rights customarily provided to the public purchasers as set forth in this Agreement. The Software and accompanying Documentation are deemed to be "commercial computer software" and "commercial computer software documentation," respectively, pursuant to DFAR Section 227.7202 and FAR Section 12.212, as applicable. Any use, modification, reproduction, release, performance, display or disclosure of the Software and accompanying Documentation by the United States Government shall be governed solely by the terms of this Agreement and shall be prohibited except to the extent expressly permitted by the terms of this Agreement.

8. GENERAL

a. Governing Law and Venue—This Agreement shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to any conflict of laws principles that would require the application of laws of a different state. The parties agree that neither the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, nor the Uniform Computer Information Transaction Act (UCITA) shall apply to this Agreement, regardless of the states in which the parties do business or are incorporated. Any action seeking enforcement of this Agreement or any provision hereof shall be brought exclusively in the state or federal courts located in the County of Santa Clara, State of California, United States of America. Each party hereby

agrees to submit to the jurisdiction of such courts. Notwithstanding the foregoing, SonicWALL is entitled to seek immediate injunctive relief in any jurisdiction in the event of any alleged breach of Section 1 and/or to otherwise protect its intellectual property.

- b. Assignment—Except as otherwise set forth herein, Customer shall not, in whole or part, assign or transfer any part of this Agreement or any rights hereunder without the prior written consent of SonicWALL. Any attempted transfer or assignment by Customer that is not permitted by this Agreement shall be null and void. Any transfer/assignment of a License that is permitted hereunder shall require the assignment/transfer of all copies of the applicable Software along with a copy of this Agreement, the assignment/transfer, and the License(s) held by the transferor Customer shall terminate upon any such transfer/assignment.
- c. Severability—If any provision of this Agreement shall be held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be contrary to law, such provision will be enforced to the maximum extent permissible and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.
- d. Privacy Policy—Customer hereby acknowledges and agrees that SonicWALL's performance of this Agreement may require SonicWALL to process or store personal data of Customer, its employees and Affiliates, and to transmit such data within SonicWALL or to SonicWALL Affiliates, partners and/or agents. Such processing, storage, and transmission may be used for the purpose of enabling SonicWALL to perform its obligations under this Agreement, and as described in SonicWALL's Privacy Policy (www.SonicWALL.com/us/Privacy_Policy.html, "Privacy Policy") and may take place in any of the countries in which SonicWALL and its Affiliates conduct business. SonicWALL reserves the right to change the Privacy Policy from time to time as described in the Privacy Policy.
- e. Notices—All notices provided hereunder shall be in writing, delivered personally, or sent by internationally recognized express courier service (such as, Federal Express), addressed to the legal department of the respective party or to such other address as may be specified in writing by either of the parties to the other in accordance with this Section.
- f. Disclosure of Customer Status—SonicWALL may include Customer in its listing of customers and, upon written consent by Customer, announce Customer's selection of SonicWALL in its marketing communications.
- g. Waiver—Performance of any obligation required by a party hereunder may be waived only by a written waiver signed by an authorized representative of the other party, which waiver shall be effective only with respect to the specific obligation described therein. Any waiver or failure to enforce any provision of this Agreement on one occasion will not be deemed a waiver of any other provision or of such provision on any other occasion.
- h. Force Majeure—Each party will be excused from performance for any period during which, and to the extent that, it is prevented from performing any obligation or service as a result of causes beyond its reasonable control, and without its fault or negligence, including without limitation, acts of God, strikes, lockouts, riots, acts of war, epidemics, communication line failures, and power failures.
- i. Audit—Customer shall maintain accurate records to verify compliance with this Agreement. Upon request by SonicWALL, Customer shall furnish (a copy of) such records to SonicWALL and certify its compliance with this Agreement.

- j. Headings—Headings in this Agreement are for convenience only and do not affect the meaning or interpretation of this Agreement. This Agreement will not be construed either in favor of or against one party or the other, but rather in accordance with its fair meaning. When the term "including" is used in this Agreement it will be construed in each case to mean "including, but not limited to."
- k. Entire Agreement—This Agreement is intended by the parties as a final expression of their agreement with respect to the subject matter hereof and may not be contradicted by evidence of any prior or contemporaneous agreement unless such agreement is signed by both parties. In the absence of such an agreement, this Agreement shall constitute the complete and exclusive statement of the terms and conditions and no extrinsic evidence whatsoever may be introduced in any judicial proceeding that may involve the Agreement. This Agreement represents the complete agreement and understanding of the parties with respect to the subject matter herein. This Agreement may be modified only through a written instrument signed by both parties.

Apache Licensing Agreement

This product may include Apache Tomcat, licensed under the Apache License Version 2.0. Version 2.0, January 2004

http://www.apache.org/licenses/

TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR USE, REPRODUCTION, AND DISTRIBUTION

- 1. Definitions:
 - License—shall mean the terms and conditions for use, reproduction, and distribution as defined by Sections 1 through 9 of this document.
 - Licensor—shall mean the copyright owner or entity authorized by the copyright owner that is granting the License.
 - Legal Entity—shall mean the union of the acting entity and all other entities that control, are controlled by, or are under common control with that entity. For the purposes of this definition, "control" means (i) the power, direct or indirect, to cause the direction or management of such entity, whether by contract or otherwise, or (ii) ownership of fifty percent (50 percent) or more of the outstanding shares, or (iii) beneficial ownership of such entity.
 - You (or Your)—shall mean an individual or Legal Entity exercising permissions granted by this License.
 - **Source**—form shall mean the preferred form for making modifications, including but not limited to software source code, documentation source, and configuration files.
 - Object—form shall mean any form resulting from mechanical transformation or translation of a Source form, including but not limited to compiled object code, generated documentation, and conversions to other media types.
 - Work—shall mean the work of authorship, whether in Source or Object form, made available under the License, as indicated by a copyright notice that is included in or attached to the work (an example is provided in the Appendix that follows).
 - Derivative Works—shall mean any work, whether in Source or Object form, that is based on (or derived from) the Work and for which the editorial revisions, annotations, elaborations, or other modifications represent, as a whole, an original work of authorship. For the purposes of this License, Derivative Works shall not include works that remain separable from, or merely link (or bind by name) to the interfaces of, the Work and Derivative Works thereof.

- Contribution—shall mean any work of authorship, including the original version of the Work and any modifications or additions to that Work or Derivative Works thereof, that is intentionally submitted to Licensor for inclusion in the Work by the copyright owner or by an individual or Legal Entity authorized to submit on behalf of the copyright owner. For the purposes of this definition, "submitted" means any form of electronic, verbal, or written communication sent to the Licensor or its representatives, including but not limited to communication on electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, the Licensor for the purpose of discussing and improving the Work, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by the copyright owner as "Not a Contribution."
- Contributor—shall mean Licensor and any individual or Legal Entity on behalf of whom a Contribution has been received by Licensor and subsequently incorporated within the Work.
- 2. Grant of Copyright License—Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable copyright license to reproduce, prepare Derivative Works of, publicly display, publicly perform, sublicense, and distribute the Work and such Derivative Works in Source or Object form.
- 3. Grant of Patent License—Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Contributor hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, offer to sell, sell, import, and otherwise transfer the Work, where such license applies only to those patent claims licensable by such Contributor that are necessarily infringed by their Contribution(s) alone or by combination of their Contribution(s) with the Work to which such Contribution(s) was submitted. If You institute patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Work or a Contribution incorporated within the Work constitutes direct or contributory patent infringement, then any patent licenses granted to You under this License for that Work shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.
- 4. Redistribution—You may reproduce and distribute copies of the Work or Derivative Works thereof in any medium, with or without modifications, and in Source or Object form, provided that You meet the following conditions:
 - **a.** You must give any other recipients of the Work or Derivative Works a copy of this License; and
 - **b.** You must cause any modified files to carry prominent notices stating that You changed the files; and
 - **c.** You must retain, in the Source form of any Derivative Works that You distribute, all copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices from the Source form of the Work, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works; and
 - d. If the Work includes a "NOTICE" text file as part of its distribution, then any Derivative Works that You distribute must include a readable copy of the attribution notices contained within such NOTICE file, excluding those notices that do not pertain to any part of the Derivative Works, in at least one of the following places: Within a NOTICE text file distributed as part of the Derivative Works; within the Source form or documentation, if provided along with the Derivative Works; or, within a display generated by the Derivative Works, if and wherever such third-party notices normally appear. The contents of the NOTICE file are for informational purposes only and do not modify the License. You may add Your own attribution notices within Derivative Works, provided that such additional attribution notices cannot be construed as modifying the License.

You may add Your own copyright statement to Your modifications and may provide additional or different license terms and conditions for use, reproduction, or distribution of Your modifications, or for any such Derivative Works as a whole, provided Your use, reproduction, and distribution of the Work otherwise complies with the conditions stated in this License.

- 5. Submission of Contributions—Unless You explicitly state otherwise, any Contribution intentionally submitted for inclusion in the Work by You to the Licensor shall be under the terms and conditions of this License, without any additional terms or conditions. Notwithstanding the above, nothing herein shall supersede or modify the terms of any separate license agreement you may have executed with Licensor regarding such Contributions.
- 6. **Trademarks**—This License does not grant permission to use the trade names, trademarks, service marks, or product names of the Licensor, except as required for reasonable and customary use in describing the origin of the Work and reproducing the content of the NOTICE file.
- 7. Disclaimer of Warranty—Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, Licensor provides the Work (and each Contributor provides its Contributions) on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied, including, without limitation, any warranties or conditions of TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. You are solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using or redistributing the Work and assume any risks associated with Your exercise of permissions under this License.
- 8. Limitation of Liability—In no event and under no legal theory, whether in tort (including negligence), contract, or otherwise, unless required by applicable law (such as deliberate and grossly negligent acts) or agreed to in writing, shall any Contributor be liable to You for damages, including any direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages of any character arising as a result of this License or out of the use or inability to use the Work (including but not limited to damages for loss of goodwill, work stoppage, computer failure or malfunction, or any and all other commercial damages or losses), even if such Contributor has been advised of the possibility of such damages.
- 9. Accepting Warranty or Additional Liability—While redistributing the Work or Derivative Works thereof, You may choose to offer, and charge a fee for, acceptance of support, warranty, indemnity, or other liability obligations and/or rights consistent with this License. However, in accepting such obligations, You may act only on Your own behalf and on Your sole responsibility, not on behalf of any other Contributor, and only if You agree to indemnify, defend, and hold each Contributor harmless for any liability incurred by, or claims asserted against, such Contributor by reason of your accepting any such warranty or additional liability.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

How to apply the Apache License to your work.

To apply the Apache License to your work, attach the following boilerplate notice, with the fields enclosed by brackets "[]" replaced with your own identifying information. (Don't include the brackets!) The text should be enclosed in the appropriate comment syntax for the file format. We also recommend that a file or class name and description of purpose be included on the same "printed page" as the copyright notice for easier identification within third-party archives.

Copyright [yyyy] [name of copyright owner]

Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at: http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0

Unless required by applicable law or agreed to in writing, software distributed under the License is distributed on an "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, either express or implied. See the License for the specific language governing permissions and limitations under the License.

APACHE TOMCAT SUBCOMPONENTS:

Apache Tomcat includes a number of subcomponents with separate copyright notices and license terms. Your use of these subcomponents is subject to the terms and conditions of the following licenses.

For the Eclipse JDT Java compiler:

Eclipse Public License - v 1.0

THE ACCOMPANYING PROGRAM IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS ECLIPSE PUBLIC LICENSE ("AGREEMENT"). ANY USE, REPRODUCTION OR DISTRIBUTION OF THE PROGRAM CONSTITUTES RECIPIENT'S ACCEPTANCE OF THIS AGREEMENT.

1. DEFINITIONS

Contribution-means:

- **a.** in the case of the initial Contributor, the initial code and documentation distributed under this Agreement, and
- in the case of each subsequent Contributor: i) changes to the Program, and ii) additions to the Program; where such changes and/or additions to the Program originate from and are distributed by that particular Contributor. A Contribution 'originates' from a Contributor if it was added to the Program by such Contributor itself or anyone acting on such Contributor's behalf. Contributions do not include additions to the Program which: (i) are separate modules of software distributed in conjunction with the Program under their own license agreement, and (ii) are not derivative works of the Program.
- Contributor—means any person or entity that distributes the Program.
- Licensed Patents—mean patent claims licensable by a Contributor which are necessarily infringed by the use or sale of its Contribution alone or when combined with the Program.
- Program—means the Contributions distributed in accordance with this Agreement.
- Recipient—means anyone who receives the Program under this Agreement, including all Contributors.

2. GRANT OF RIGHTS

- a. Subject to the terms of this Agreement, each Contributor hereby grants Recipient a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free copyright license to reproduce, prepare derivative works of, publicly display, publicly perform, distribute and sublicense the Contribution of such Contributor, if any, and such derivative works, in source code and object code form.
- b. Subject to the terms of this Agreement, each Contributor hereby grants Recipient a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free patent license under Licensed Patents to make, use, sell, offer to sell, import and otherwise transfer the Contribution of such Contributor, if any, in source code and object code form. This patent license shall apply to the combination of the Contribution and the Program if, at the time the Contribution is added by the Contributor, such addition of the Contribution causes such combination to be covered by the Licensed Patents. The patent license shall not apply to any other combinations which include the Contribution. No hardware per se is licensed hereunder.
- c. Recipient understands that although each Contributor grants the licenses to its Contributions set forth herein, no assurances are provided by any Contributor that the Program does not infringe the patent or other intellectual property rights of any other entity. Each Contributor disclaims any liability to Recipient for claims brought by any other entity based on infringement of intellectual property rights or otherwise. As a condition to exercising the rights and licenses granted hereunder, each Recipient hereby assumes sole responsibility to secure any other intellectual property rights needed, if any. For example, if a third-party patent license is required to allow Recipient to distribute the Program, it is Recipient's responsibility to acquire that license before distributing the Program.
- **d.** Each Contributor represents that to its knowledge it has sufficient copyright rights in its Contribution, if any, to grant the copyright license set forth in this Agreement.

3. REQUIREMENTS

A Contributor may choose to distribute the Program in object code form under its own license agreement, provided that:

- a. it complies with the terms and conditions of this Agreement; and
- b. its license agreement: i) effectively disclaims on behalf of all Contributors all warranties and conditions, express and implied, including warranties or conditions of title and non-infringement, and implied warranties or conditions of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose; ii) effectively excludes on behalf of all Contributors all liability for damages, including direct, indirect, special, incidental and consequential damages, such as lost profits; iii) states that any provisions which differ from this Agreement are offered by that Contributor alone and not by any other party; and iv) states that source code for the Program is available from such Contributor, and informs licensees how to obtain it in a reasonable manner on or through a medium customarily used for software exchange.

When the Program is made available in source code form:

- a. it must be made available under this Agreement; and
- **b.** a copy of this Agreement must be included with each copy of the Program.

Contributors may not remove or alter any copyright notices contained within the Program.

Each Contributor must identify itself as the originator of its Contribution, if any, in a manner that reasonably allows subsequent Recipients to identify the originator of the Contribution.

4. COMMERCIAL DISTRIBUTION

Commercial distributors of software may accept certain responsibilities with respect to end users, business partners and the like. While this license is intended to facilitate the commercial use of the Program, the Contributor who includes the Program in a commercial product offering should do so in a manner which does not create potential liability for other Contributors. Therefore, if a Contributor includes the Program in a commercial product offering, such Contributor ("Commercial Contributor") hereby agrees to defend and indemnify every other Contributor ("Indemnified Contributor") against any losses, damages and costs (collectively "Losses") arising from claims, lawsuits and other legal actions brought by a third-party against the Indemnified Contributor to the extent caused by the acts or omissions of such Commercial Contributor in connection with its distribution of the Program in a commercial product offering. The obligations in this section do not apply to any claims or Losses relating to any actual or alleged intellectual property infringement. In order to qualify, an Indemnified Contributor must: a) promptly notify the Commercial

Contributor in writing of such claim, and b) allow the Commercial Contributor to control, and cooperate with the Commercial Contributor in, the defense and any related settlement negotiations. The Indemnified Contributor may

participate in any such claim at its own expense.

For example, a Contributor might include the Program in a commercial product offering, Product X. That Contributor is then a Commercial Contributor. If that Commercial Contributor then makes performance claims, or offers warranties related to Product X, those performance claims and warranties are such Commercial Contributor's responsibility alone. Under this section, the

Commercial Contributor would have to defend claims against the other Contributors related to those performance claims and warranties, and if a court requires any other Contributor to pay any damages as a result, the Commercial Contributor must pay those damages.

5. NO WARRANTY

EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, THE PROGRAM IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Each Recipient is solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using and distributing the Program and assumes all risks associated with its exercise of rights under this Agreement , including but not limited to the risks and costs of program errors, compliance with applicable laws, damage to or loss of data, programs or equipment, and unavailability or interruption of operations.

6. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY

EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, NEITHER RECIPIENT NOR ANY CONTRIBUTORS SHALL HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION LOST PROFITS), HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OR DISTRIBUTION OF THE PROGRAM OR THE EXERCISE OF ANY RIGHTS GRANTED HEREUNDER, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

7. GENERAL

If any provision of this Agreement is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this Agreement, and without further action by the parties hereto, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable. If Recipient institutes patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Program itself (excluding combinations of the Program with other software or hardware) infringes such Recipient's patent(s), then such Recipient's rights granted under Section 2(b) shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.

All Recipient's rights under this Agreement shall terminate if it fails to comply with any of the material terms or conditions of this Agreement and does not cure such failure in a reasonable period of time after becoming aware of such noncompliance. If all Recipient's rights under this Agreement terminate, Recipient agrees to cease use and distribution of the Program as soon as reasonably practicable. However, Recipient's obligations under this Agreement and any licenses granted by Recipient relating to the Program shall continue and survive.

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute copies of this Agreement, but in order to avoid inconsistency the Agreement is copyrighted and may only be modified in the following manner. The Agreement Steward reserves the right to publish new versions (including revisions) of this Agreement from time to time. No one other than the Agreement Steward has the right to modify this Agreement. The Eclipse Foundation is the initial Agreement Steward to a suitable separate entity. Each new version of the Agreement will be given a distinguishing version number. The Program (including Contributions) may always be distributed subject to the version of the Agreement under which it was received. In addition, after a new version of the Agreement is published, Contributor may elect to distribute the Program (including its Contributions) under the new version. Except as expressly stated in Sections 2(a) and 2(b)

above, Recipient receives no rights or licenses to the intellectual property of any Contributor under this Agreement, whether expressly, by implication,

estoppel or otherwise. All rights in the Program not expressly granted under this Agreement are reserved.

This Agreement is governed by the laws of the State of New York and the intellectual property laws of the United States of America. No party to this Agreement will bring a legal action under this Agreement more than one year after the cause of action arose. Each party waives its rights to a jury trial in any resulting litigation.

For the Windows Installer component:

- All NSIS source code, plug-ins, documentation, examples, header files and graphics, with the exception of the compression modules and where otherwise noted, are licensed under the zlib/libpng license.
- The zlib compression module for NSIS is licensed under the zlib/libpng license.
- The bzip2 compression module for NSIS is licensed under the bzip2 license.
- The Izma compression module for NSIS is licensed under the Common Public License version 1.0.

zlib/libpng license

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.

- 2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
- 3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

bzip2 license

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
- **3.** Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
- 4. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR ``AS IS AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIEDWARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Julian Seward, Cambridge, UK.

jseward@acm.org

Common Public License version 1.0

THE ACCOMPANYING PROGRAM IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS COMMON PUBLIC LICENSE ("AGREEMENT"). ANY USE, REPRODUCTION OR DISTRIBUTION OF THE PROGRAM CONSTITUTES RECIPIENT'S ACCEPTANCE OF THIS AGREEMENT.

1. **DEFINITIONS**

Contribution-means:

- **a.** in the case of the initial Contributor, the initial code and documentation distributed under this Agreement, and:
- a. in the case of each subsequent Contributor: i) changes to the Program, and ii) additions to the Program; where such changes and/or additions to the Program originate from and are distributed by that particular Contributor. A Contribution 'originates' from a Contributor if it was added to the Program by such Contributor itself or anyone acting on such Contributor's behalf. Contributions do not include additions to the Program which: (i) are separate modules of software distributed in conjunction with the Program under their own license agreement, and (ii) are not derivative works of the Program.
- Contributor—means any person or entity that distributes the Program.
- Licensed Patents—means patent claims licensable by a Contributor which are necessarily infringed by the use or sale of its Contribution alone or when combined with the Program.

- Program—means the Contributions distributed in accordance with this Agreement.
- Recipient—means anyone who receives the Program under this Agreement, including all Contributors.

2. GRANT OF RIGHTS

- **b.** Subject to the terms of this Agreement, each Contributor hereby grants Recipient a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free copyright license to reproduce, prepare derivative works of, publicly display, publicly perform, distribute and sublicense the Contribution of such Contributor, if any, and such derivative works, in source code and object code form.
- c. Subject to the terms of this Agreement, each Contributor hereby grants Recipient a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free patent license under Licensed Patents to make, use, sell, offer to sell, import and otherwise transfer the Contribution of such Contributor, if any, in source code and object code form. This patent license shall apply to the combination of the Contribution and the Program if, at the time the Contribution is added by the Contributor, such addition of the Contribution causes such combination to be covered by the Licensed Patents. The patent license shall not apply to any other combinations which include the Contribution. No hardware per se is licensed hereunder.
- d. Recipient understands that although each Contributor grants the licenses to its Contributions set forth herein, no assurances are provided by any Contributor that the Program does not infringe the patent or other intellectual property rights of any other entity. Each Contributor disclaims any liability to Recipient for claims brought by any other entity based on infringement of intellectual property rights or otherwise. As a condition to exercising the rights and licenses granted hereunder, each Recipient hereby assumes sole responsibility to secure any other intellectual property rights needed, if any. For example, if a third-party patent license is required to allow Recipient to distribute the Program, it is Recipient's responsibility to acquire that license before distributing the Program.
- e. Each Contributor represents that to its knowledge it has sufficient copyright rights in its Contribution, if any, to grant the copyright license set forth in this Agreement.

3. REQUIREMENTS

A Contributor may choose to distribute the Program in object code form under its own license agreement, provided that:

- a. it complies with the terms and conditions of this Agreement; and
- b. its license agreement: i) effectively disclaims on behalf of all Contributors all warranties and conditions, express and implied, including warranties or conditions of title and non-infringement, and implied warranties or conditions of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose; ii) effectively excludes on behalf of all Contributors all liability for damages, including direct, indirect, special, incidental and consequential damages, such as lost profits; iii) states that any provisions which differ from this Agreement are offered by that Contributor alone and not by any other party; and iv) states that source code for the Program is available from such Contributor, and informs licensees how to obtain it in a reasonable manner on or through a medium customarily used for software exchange.

When the Program is made available in source code form:

- a. it must be made available under this Agreement; and
- **b.** a copy of this Agreement must be included with each copy of the Program.

Contributors may not remove or alter any copyright notices contained within the Program.

Each Contributor must identify itself as the originator of its Contribution, if any, in a manner that reasonably allows subsequent Recipients to identify the originator of the Contribution.

4. COMMERCIAL DISTRIBUTION

Commercial distributors of software may accept certain responsibilities with respect to end users, business partners and the like. While this license is intended to facilitate the commercial use of the Program, the Contributor who includes the Program in a commercial product offering should do so in a manner which does not create potential liability for other Contributors. Therefore, if a Contributor includes the Program in a commercial product offering, such Contributor ("Commercial Contributor") hereby agrees to defend and indemnify every other Contributor ("Indemnified Contributor") against any losses, damages and costs (collectively "Losses") arising from claims, lawsuits and other legal actions brought by a third-party against the Indemnified Contributor to the extent caused by the acts or omissions of such Commercial Contributor in connection with its distribution of the Program in a commercial product offering. The obligations in this section do not apply to any claims or Losses relating to any actual or alleged intellectual property infringement. In order to qualify, an Indemnified Contributor must: a) promptly notify the Commercial Contributor in writing of such claim, and b) allow the Commercial Contributor to control, and cooperate with the Commercial Contributor in, the defense and any related settlement negotiations. The Indemnified Contributor may participate in any such claim at its own expense.

For example, a Contributor might include the Program in a commercial product offering, Product X. That Contributor is then a Commercial Contributor. If that Commercial Contributor then makes performance claims, or offers warranties related to Product X, those performance claims and warranties are such Commercial Contributor's responsibility alone. Under this section, the

Commercial Contributor would have to defend claims against the other Contributors related to those performance claims and warranties, and if a court requires any other Contributor to pay any damages as a result, the Commercial Contributor must pay those damages.

5. NO WARRANTY

EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, THE PROGRAM IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Each Recipient is solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using and distributing the Program and assumes all risks associated with its exercise of rights under this Agreement, including but not limited to the risks and costs of program errors, compliance with applicable laws, damage to or loss of data, programs or equipment, and unavailability or interruption of operations.

6. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY

EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, NEITHER RECIPIENT NOR ANY CONTRIBUTORS SHALL HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION LOST PROFITS), HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OR DISTRIBUTION OF THE PROGRAM OR THE EXERCISE OF ANY RIGHTS GRANTED HEREUNDER, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

7. GENERAL

If any provision of this Agreement is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this Agreement, and without further action by the parties hereto, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable.

If Recipient institutes patent litigation against a Contributor with respect to a patent applicable to software (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit), then any patent licenses granted by that Contributor to such Recipient under this Agreement shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed. In addition, if Recipient institutes patent litigation against any entity

(including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Program itself (excluding combinations of the Program with other software or hardware) infringes such Recipient's patent(s), then such Recipient's rights granted under Section 2(b) shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.

All Recipient's rights under this Agreement shall terminate if it fails to comply with any of the material terms or conditions of this Agreement and does not cure such failure in a reasonable period of time after becoming aware of such noncompliance. If all Recipient's rights under this Agreement terminate, Recipient agrees to cease use and distribution of the Program as soon as

reasonably practicable. However, Recipient's obligations under this Agreement and any licenses granted by Recipient relating to the Program shall continue and survive.

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute copies of this Agreement, but in order to avoid inconsistency the Agreement is copyrighted and may only be modified in the following manner. The Agreement Steward reserves the right to publish new versions (including revisions) of this Agreement from time to time. No one other than the Agreement Steward has the right to modify this Agreement. IBM is the initial Agreement Steward. IBM may assign the responsibility to serve as the Agreement Steward to a suitable separate entity. Each new version of the Agreement will be given a distinguishing version number. The Program (including Contributions) may always be distributed subject to the version of the Agreement is published, Contributor may elect to distribute the Program (including its Contributions) under the new version. Except as expressly stated in Sections

2(a) and 2(b) above, Recipient receives no rights or licenses to the intellectual property of any Contributor under this Agreement, whether expressly, by implication, estoppel or otherwise. All rights in the Program not expressly granted under this Agreement are reserved.

This Agreement is governed by the laws of the State of New York and the intellectual property laws of the United States of America. No party to this Agreement will bring a legal action under this Agreement more than one year after the cause of action arose. Each party waives its rights to a jury trial in any resulting litigation.

Special exception for LZMA compression module

Igor Pavlov and Amir Szekely, the authors of the LZMA compression module for NSIS, expressly permit you to statically or dynamically link your code (or bind by name) to the files from the LZMA compression module for NSIS without subjecting your linked code to the terms of the Common Public license version 1.0. Any modifications or additions to files from the LZMA compression module for NSIS, however, are subject to the terms of the Common Public License version 1.0.